Bug Club
Online Books
Comprehension Question
Answer Guidance

Contents

A note from the Bug Club team 11

Blue All Levels 12
Animal Talent Show 12
A Trip to Doctor Woof 12
Get A Parrot! 12
Steg and the Tar Pit 13
The Last Egg 13
The Sockosaurus 14

Green C Book Band 15
The Old Things 15

Green All Levels 16
Best Friends 16
Don't Call Me Mum! 16
Planet Emerald 16
Soppy Hoppy 17

Orange A Book Band 18
Adventure Kids: Chase in New York 18
Dino-sauring 19
The Penguins of Madagascar: Good Deed Day 19
All Hail King Julien: Everyone Loves King Julien 20
Flips and Spins 20
Strawberries at School 20

Orange B Book Band 21
Adventure Kids: Escape in Egypt 21
Goldilocks and the Clever Plan 21
The Penguins of Madagascar: A Kipper for Skipper 22
All Hail King Julien: King Julien’s Jobs 22
Colourful Creatures 22
Fun Festivals 23
My Skateboarding Scrapbook 24
Orange All Levels  
- Far From Home 25  
- Farming Then and Now 25  
- Shadow Puppets 25  
- All Gone! 25  
- At the Vet’s 27  
- Frog Fight 27  
- When I Was Your Age 28  
- Little Red Riding Hoody 28  
- Fun and Mix-ups! 29  
- Superman and the Robots 30  

Turquoise A Book Band  
- Adventure Kids: Run in the Rainforest 31  
- Goldilocks and the Porridge Problem 31  
- Dino-splashing 31  
- The Penguins of Madagascar: Penguins to the Rescue 32  
- All Hail King Julien: King Julien and the Rain Dance 33  
- Cars, Cars, Cars 33  
- Tricking Our Eyes 33  
- Welcome to the Circus! 34  

Turquoise B Book Band  
- Pete’s Peculiar Pet Shop: Just the Job 35  
- The Sharma Family: What’s Out There? 35  
- Young Robin Hood: Hit and Miss 35  
- Thunderbirds Are Go: Skyhook 35  
- Extreme Living 36  
- Can You Do This? 37  
- Living in a Castle 38  

Turquoise All Levels  
- Hunter’s Money Jar 39  
- After Dark 39  
- Origami 39  
- The Best Bet 40  
- The Billy Goats Gruff 40  
- Rap-Punzel 41  
- One-way Ticket to Mars 41  
- Tricking the Tiger 41  
- Where, Oh Where is Mrs Brown? 42  
- Surprise! 42  
- Jimmy’s Super Watch 43
Purple A Book Band

Pete’s Peculiar Pet Shop: The Wrong Jumper
The Sharma Family: Stop That Dog!
Yun and the Fire Demon
Young Robin Hood: Marian to the Rescue
Thunderbirds Are Go: Fireflash
All About Mummies
When Animals Attack

Purple B Book Band

Pete’s Peculiar Pet Shop: I Want a Unicorn!
The Sharma Family: Best Birthday Ever!
Yun and the Giant Bird
Young Robin Hood: The Great Escape
Thunderbirds Are Go: Tunnels of Time
Chocolate!
Star Wars: What Is a Wookiee?
Pirates: Life at Sea

Purple All Levels

The Winner’s Choice
Living Lights
Wild Weather
Doctor, Doctor!
Goha and the Shoes
The School Quiz
Laugh Out Loud!
Lex Luthor Gets a Job

Gold A Book Band

The Fang Family: Sports Day Snack Attack
Pete’s Peculiar Pet Shop: The Very Smelly Dragon
Tales of Taliesin: The Powerful Potion
Cloudy with a Chance of Meatballs: Flint the Inventor
The Sarah Jane Adventures: Judoon Afternoon
You CAN Try This at Home!
Fossils
The Truth About Fish and Chips

Gold B Book Band

The Fang Family: Blood Buns and Scarecrows
The Pirate and the Potter Family: Sick as a Parrot
Cloudy with a Chance of Meatballs: Weird Weather
The Sarah Jane Adventures: Blathereen Dream
Animals to the Rescue
Going into Space

© Pearson Education 2018
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Book Band</th>
<th>Title</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Gold All Levels</strong></td>
<td>In Your Dreams</td>
<td>66</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>The Fish in the Tree</td>
<td>66</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>The Noises Next Door</td>
<td>66</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Snow White – The Hex Factor</td>
<td>67</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Tasty Treats</td>
<td>68</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>The Purple Superman</td>
<td>69</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>White A Book Band</strong></td>
<td>The Fang Family: Fright at the Fair</td>
<td>70</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>The Pirate and the Potter Family: All at Sea</td>
<td>70</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>The Sarah Jane Adventures: Painting Peril</td>
<td>71</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Stunt Bunny: Superpet!</td>
<td>71</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>The Adventures of Sinbad the Sailor: Monkeys and Monsters</td>
<td>72</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Wizards, Spiders and Castles</td>
<td>73</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Caring for Exotic Animals</td>
<td>73</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Birds of Prey</td>
<td>74</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Monkeys</td>
<td>75</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>How Animals Smell, Taste and Touch</td>
<td>76</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>White B Book Band</strong></td>
<td>The Pirate and the Potter Family: Set Sail for School</td>
<td>77</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>The Sarah Jane Adventures: The Haunted House</td>
<td>78</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Meddlers: The Not-So-Merry-Go-Round</td>
<td>78</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Stunt Bunny: The Great Getaway</td>
<td>79</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>The Adventures of Sinbad the Sailor: The Valley of Diamonds</td>
<td>80</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Black-Tailed Prairie Dogs</td>
<td>80</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Animal Self-Defence</td>
<td>81</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Earth’s Amazing Environments</td>
<td>81</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Gross Things: From Your Head to Your Toes</td>
<td>82</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>White All Levels</strong></td>
<td>Our Neighbour’s a Vampire</td>
<td>83</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Gross Things: About Animals</td>
<td>83</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>I Wonder Why?</td>
<td>84</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>The Escape</td>
<td>84</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>The Genie</td>
<td>85</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Wallace and Gromit: The Weatherman</td>
<td>85</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Mirror Magic</td>
<td>87</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Book Band</td>
<td>88</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-----------------------------------</td>
<td>------------</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Lime A Book Band</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Meddlers: Tick, Tock, Unfix the Clock</td>
<td>88</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rocky and the Wolf Cub</td>
<td>88</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pirate School: The Birthday Battle</td>
<td>89</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mae in the Middle: Music Master</td>
<td>89</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DreamWorks Dragons: When Lightning Strikes</td>
<td>90</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bumblebees, Sweets and a See-Through Stomach</td>
<td>91</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A Volcano Wakes Up</td>
<td>91</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Poptropica: The Ultimate Guide</td>
<td>93</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Awesome Animal Adventures</td>
<td>93</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bugs in our Homes</td>
<td>94</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Book Band</th>
<th>96</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Lime B Book Band</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Meddlers: Lickety Kwick and the Mixed-Up Fix</td>
<td>96</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rocky Runs Away</td>
<td>97</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pirate School: Nice Dog!</td>
<td>97</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mae in the Middle: Super Sleuth</td>
<td>98</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DreamWorks Dragons: No Pack Like Home</td>
<td>99</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Work! Work! Work!</td>
<td>99</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Watching Comets</td>
<td>100</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Looking for Invisible Clues</td>
<td>100</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>About Earth</td>
<td>101</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Star Wars: I Want to Be a Jedi</td>
<td>102</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Book Band</th>
<th>104</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Lime All Levels</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tops and Bottoms</td>
<td>104</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The Food You Eat</td>
<td>104</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Exploring Caves</td>
<td>105</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Choose Me!</td>
<td>105</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The Smell of the Cakes</td>
<td>106</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Traffic Jam</td>
<td>107</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Wallace and Gromit: A Runaway Success</td>
<td>107</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Monstrous Trouble</td>
<td>108</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Brown A Book Band</td>
<td>Page</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-----------------------------------------------</td>
<td>------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Moya, the Luck Child</td>
<td>110</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Changing Places</td>
<td>110</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The Quigleys: Wild Life</td>
<td>111</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Double Trouble</td>
<td>112</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Damian Drooth and the Disappearing Daughter</td>
<td>113</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Come Down, Golden</td>
<td>113</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Flash the Dog Bounces In!</td>
<td>115</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mountain Tales of Norway</td>
<td>115</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The Pirates in an Adventure with Scientists:</td>
<td>116</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Quest for Treasure</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Whose Is This?</td>
<td>116</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>How Do They Make Costumes?</td>
<td>116</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>How to Be a Sports Star</td>
<td>118</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lost in Egypt</td>
<td>119</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>How Do Lobsters Stay Young?</td>
<td>119</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Machines on the Move</td>
<td>120</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Brown B Book Band</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Pizza at the Double</td>
<td>121</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The Malice Family</td>
<td>122</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Learning the Ropes</td>
<td>122</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The Quigleys Have Talent</td>
<td>123</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Damian Drooth and the Pop Star’s Wedding</td>
<td>124</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The Cloud Rider</td>
<td>124</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Flash the Dog Dives In!</td>
<td>126</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Big Giant, Little Bear</td>
<td>126</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The Pirates in an Adventure with Scientists:</td>
<td>127</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A Daring Rescue</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dead Gorgeous</td>
<td>128</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>101 Ways to Beat Boredom</td>
<td>128</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Daredevils</td>
<td>129</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Brown All Levels</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Ghoul School</td>
<td>130</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Money Matters</td>
<td>130</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Robbie Ravenbeak</td>
<td>131</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Wicked Baba Yaga</td>
<td>132</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Step Inside a Story</td>
<td>132</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Unexpected</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Grey A Book Band</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>------------------</td>
<td>---</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Finding a Friend</strong></td>
<td>134</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Heading for Glory</strong></td>
<td>135</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Charlie Small: Gorillas vs The Leopard Men</strong></td>
<td>136</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Rocket Ronnie and the Vortex of Doom</strong></td>
<td>137</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Beowulf and the Beast</strong></td>
<td>138</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Dog Alert</strong></td>
<td>139</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Pet Finders Underground</strong></td>
<td>139</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>The Amazing Adventures of Erik</strong></td>
<td>140</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Dinkin Dings and the Frightening Things</strong></td>
<td>140</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Porpoises In Peril</strong></td>
<td>141</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>How Do They Make Bikes?</strong></td>
<td>141</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>How to be an Explorer</strong></td>
<td>143</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Buried Treasure</strong></td>
<td>143</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Why Does Lightning Flash?</strong></td>
<td>144</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Grey B Book Band</th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Charlie Small: Chasm of the Killer Bees</strong></td>
<td>145</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Rocket Ronnie and the Bleekoids</strong></td>
<td>146</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Beowulf Meets his Match</strong></td>
<td>146</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>A Friend in Need</strong></td>
<td>147</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Stage Fright</strong></td>
<td>147</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Rat Island</strong></td>
<td>148</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Pet Finders on the Case</strong></td>
<td>150</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Dinkin Dings and the Double from Dimension 9</strong></td>
<td>150</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>In Their Shoes: My Life as a Tudor Schoolboy</strong></td>
<td>151</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Dead Losses: Useless Rulers from History</strong></td>
<td>152</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>101 Ways to Save the Planet</strong></td>
<td>153</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Birds</strong></td>
<td>154</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Real Life Artists</strong></td>
<td>154</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Grey All Levels</th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Night of the Dragon</strong></td>
<td>156</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Mythic Heroes</strong></td>
<td>156</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Haunting Histories</strong></td>
<td>157</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Meena the Monster Minder</strong></td>
<td>157</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>The Summer Explorers</strong></td>
<td>158</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Shocks and Secrets</strong></td>
<td>158</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Blue A Book Band
The Curse of the Highwayman 160
The Dragon’s Tale (and Other Beasty Stories) 160
Kura’s Story 161
The Mystery of the Missing Finger 161
An Awfully Beasty Business: Hunting for Trolls 162
Dark Stone Eye 163
The Stepsister Diaries: I'm Not Sharing with You! 164
Ampata and the Scarlet Macaws 165
Washed Up! 166
How Do They Make Comics? 166
How to be a Pop Star 169
Creatures in Danger 170
Future Transport in Space 170

Blue B Book Band
The Highwayman’s Revenge 171
Coming Home 171
Saving a Sea Monster 172
Savitri’s Tale 173
The Mystery of the Poisoned Pudding 175
Pictures 176
The Stepsister Diaries: Hands Off My Stuff! 177
Rosa and the Runaway Ram 178
E. Nesbit’s The Railway Children 179
101 Things to do in the UK 180
Dead Sick 181
Sharks 182
Real Life Storytellers 182

Blue All Levels
Finlay and the Bogeyman 183
Extreme 183
Doctor Who: Victory of the Daleks 184
Curious Cases 185
Joe’s Weird World 185
Tricked You! 186
Red A Book Band
- Cinderella: The Real Story 187
- Cosmo B. Henderson: What ARE you Doing? 187
- The Queen’s Spy 189
- Doctor Who: The Eleventh Hour 189
- Petronas 190
- The Catapult Kid: The Greatest Show on Earth 191
- Howzat! 192
- Robert Louis Stevenson's Treasure Island 193
- Jess and Layla’s Astronomical Assignment 193
- How Do They Make Wallace & Gromit? 193
- How to be a Detective 197
- What Makes a Roller Coaster Roll? 197
- Rainforests at Risk 198
- Technology 198

Red B Book Band
- The Time-Travelling Cat and the Tudor Treasure 199
- Cosmo B. Henderson: Could Do Better 199
- The Velvet Thief 201
- The Dangerous World of Joe McGinty 202
- Dr Who: The Time of Angels 202
- The Time-Travelling Cat and the Egyptian Goddess 203
- Hot Money 204
- The Catapult Kid: Outlaws on the Loose 205
- Wild Papa Woods 206
- William Shakespeare's King Lear 207
- In Their Shoes: My Life as a Victorian Maid 208
- Dead Adventurous: Trailblazing Voyages from History 209
- Reptiles 209
- Real Life Superheroes 210
- 101 Things to do Before Secondary School 210

Red All Levels
- Mobile Fear 212
- Explorers: Triumphs and Troubles 212
- Dr Who: The Lodger 213
- Three Mistakes and a Monster 214
- Find a Way Out! 215
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Red Plus Book Band</th>
<th>217</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Lost</td>
<td>217</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Flight from Ledron</td>
<td>218</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Inside the Game</td>
<td>219</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The Spiral Chrysalis</td>
<td>222</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Jack No Name</td>
<td>223</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dogs of the Hinterland</td>
<td>224</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Island Bound</td>
<td>226</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Into the Hinterland</td>
<td>227</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Run</td>
<td>229</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The Sign of a Warrior</td>
<td>230</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
A note from the Bug Club team

When children log on to Bug Club and read through the books that have been assigned to them, they are prompted to complete activities designed to assess their progress across a range of literacy skills. Many of the questions in these activities have a correct answer, but some of them ask for each child’s point of view. These ‘free-text’ questions are designed to prompt children to think about and comment on the writer’s purpose – and to use evaluative comprehension skills. The answers that the children type feed back to the Reporting tab in the teacher view, so you can start to assess whether or not they have understood the text, and how clear their answers are.

We’ve been asked by many of you to provide guidance for marking or discussing these free-text questions, so that is exactly what we have compiled in this document. As Bug Club includes books with up to 200 pages (the Red Plus titles), we understand that it’s not always possible for you to have read the book before commenting on a child’s answer. This answer guidance has been authored by teachers for teachers – and it is provided to give you an idea of what acceptable answers might be. There are many possible ways that children could answer these questions, and your judgement should consider how well they have explained their thoughts and whether they have included evidence for their opinions. However, the information on each book provided here will provide the context and background information you will need in order to mark or discuss every free-text question.

With very best wishes,
The Bug Club team
Blue All Levels (KS1)

Animal Talent Show

p.7: **Have you ever watched a talent competition on television? Click on an answer and explain your choice.**
If ‘Yes’ if selected: **What shows have you watched? How is ‘Animal Talent’ similar?**
If ‘NO’ if selected: **How do you think ‘Animal Talent’ might be like other talent shows?**
Answers will reflect children’s own experiences, but should show an awareness of what talent competitions are and an ability to relate the story to real-world experience. They could mention:
- The contestants on ‘Animal Talent’ all sing for a judge.
- The best singer will win the competition.
- ‘Animal Talent’ has a big star for a judge.
- The judge, Fantastic Ant, has a large buzzer that he presses when he is fed up of the act on stage.
- Fantastic Ant is rude to the contestants and likes to brag about himself.

A Trip to Doctor Woof

p.9: **How do you think Mum is feeling? Click on one answer and explain your choice.**
The options given are ‘Worried’, ‘Happy’ and ‘Excited’.
Mum (a dog) has brought her three pups to see Doctor Woof as Dot has spots. Answers are likely to conclude that Mum is worried about Dot, and possibly that she thinks Doctor Woof is doing a good job. They should give reasons that draw on the following facts.
- Doctor Woof gives Dot a green bone (his ‘best bone for spots’).
- Instead of clearing up the spots, it just turns them green.
- Mum comments that ‘the best bone was no good.’
- The image of Mum shows her looking concerned.

Get A Parrot!

p.10: **Which pet would you choose? Click on one picture and explain your choice.**
The options given are a parrot or a dog. Either answer should be acceptable, as the question asks for an opinion. It must be justified appropriately, but needn’t refer directly to the text.
For example:
- I would choose a parrot as they are clever and can talk.
- I would choose a dog because I like to go for long walks.
The information given about parrots in the text is:
- Parrots are cool.
- Parrots peck things and make a mess.
- Parrots cost a lot of money.

**Steg and the Tar Pit**

p.16: **Which of these characters do you like most and why? Click on one picture and explain your choice.**
The options given are Steg, Plod and the Narrator. Answers will be entirely subjective, but should be justified and could mention the following details.
- Steg, a stegosaurus, suggests trying something new and risky: visiting the tar pit. He is enthusiastic and a bit of a show off. He eventually puts himself at risk by falling into the tar pit.
- Plod, a diplodocus, likes to splash in the river safely and warns against playing by the tar pit. He helps to rescue Steg by building a raft with their other friends.
- The Narrator, a human, is neutral and knowledgeable.

**The Last Egg**

p.16: **Do you like the dragon? Click on one answer and explain your choice.**
Answers will be subjective, but should be justified and could mention the following details.
- The dragon hatches from the last egg in a group of five, and its siblings are all chicks.
- Nevertheless, the hen says the dragon is ‘very sweet’ and attempts to look after it.
- The dragon tries and dislikes the chickens’ food: seeds, nuts, buns and crisps.
- Eventually, it decides it really wants to eat the hen and chicks instead.

Answers could therefore conclude that the dragon is ungrateful and vicious, or that he is following his survival instincts when alone in a strange environment.
**The Sockosaurus**

p.16: **Do you like the Sockosaurus? Click on one answer and explain your choice.**

Answers will be subjective, but should be justified and could mention the following details.

- The Sockosaurus believes that his job on Christmas Eve is to eat all ‘the socks that the children hang out for me’.
- When Father Christmas explains that the socks are meant for him, the Sockosaurus says he’ll eat them anyway.
- The Sockosaurus threatens to eat the reindeer.
- Father Christmas then makes a deal with the Sockosaurus: if he helps the tired reindeer to pull the sleigh, he can eat the many socks that Father Christmas is given every year.
- The Sockosaurus still wants to eat the reindeer ‘for pudding’, but Father Christmas offers him all his ties, too, and the Sockosaurus is happy.

Answers could therefore conclude that the Sockosaurus is greedy and vicious, or that he is simply misguided and hungry, and is happy to help.
Green C Book Band

The Old Things

p.16: **Do you like old or new things better? Click on the old things or the new things and write why.**

Either answer should be acceptable, as the question asks for an opinion. It needn’t refer directly to the text, but must be justified appropriately.

For instance:
- I like old things because they are interesting and remind me of my grandma.
- I like new things because they are clever and can do more.
Green All Levels

Best Friends

p.16: **Which character do you like best and why? Click on a character and explain your choice.**
The options given are Bird, Mountain and Mouse. Answers will be entirely subjective, but could mention the following details.

- Bird rejected Mouse’s friendship, as he was determined to find the strongest best friend he could. He questions Sun, Cloud, Wind and Mountain trying to find who is the strongest.
- Mountain is modest and kind: he says that Mouse is stronger than him because Mouse keeps nibbling holes in him.
- Mouse is friendly and remains interested in Bird’s quest. When Bird finally wishes to return Mouse’s friendship, though, she teases him by repeating his own words back to him: ‘I’ll have to think about it!’

Don’t Call Me Mum!

p.15: **Would you like to be taught by one of your family? Click on one answer and explain your choice.**
The premise of this play is that Josh’s mum is also his teacher at school. Either answer should be acceptable, as the question asks for an opinion. It needn’t refer directly to the text, but must be justified appropriately.

For example:

- I would like to be taught by one of my family because this would mean a friendly face at school.
- I would not like to be taught by one of my family because then I would not be allowed help with my homework.

Planet Emerald

p.16: **Would you like to visit Planet Emerald? Click on an answer and explain your choice.**
Answers will be subjective, but should be justified and could mention the following details.

- On Planet Emerald, three plus three is thirty-three.
- On Planet Emerald, two plus two is tutu, which is a ballet dress.
- On Planet Emerald, everything is green: the sun, sheep, houses, shops, cats and dogs.
**Soppy Hoppy**

p.16: **Do you think Narky Shary should have eaten Shocky Crocky? Click on an answer and explain your choice.**

Either answer should be acceptable, as the question asks for an opinion. Responses should be justified, though, and may refer to any of the following facts.

- Shocky Crocky offered to ferry the four main animal characters across a river, but then attempted to eat them.
- Narky Sharky saw this, agreed with Shocky Crocky that they both wanted to have dinner, and then ate him.
- Narky Sharky then helped the four other animals by explaining their mistake (that a mango, not the sun, had fallen from the sky) and helped them to get home.
- Narky Sharky has been the (fairly charming) narrator of the play. Narky Sharky is therefore the more sympathetic predator, but answers could argue that:
  - Shocky Crocky was simply following his nature;
  - The four animals he was carrying were acting foolishly;
  - Narky Sharky is as bad as Shocky Crocky for attempting to eat another animal at all.
Orange A Book Band

Adventure Kids: Chase in New York

p.15: Make a poster for the film the actors are making. Click on a picture and write about the film below.
The image options given are:
- a woman shouting for help
- a robber running past a frightened man and into a park
- a robber speeding through the park
- a young girl (Lin) chasing the robber.
Answers will be entirely subjective, should be creative and could be written in a style appropriate for blurbs on a film poster rather than full sentences. We know the following facts about the film.
- A robber in a mask steals a woman’s bag, and flees into a park.
- He is chased by a young girl and boy (Lin and Ed).
- They run through the park, across a bridge and into a zoo.
- They pass penguins, otters, a panda and seals.
- The robber falls into the seals’ pool and Lin gets the bag back.

p.16: Pretend you are Lin or Ed, writing a postcard to a friend called Lee. Choose the postcard you want to send, and write a short message about what you like best about your New York trip.
The image options given are:
- Seals at the zoo
- The Statue of Liberty
- Yellow taxi cabs
- Central Park.
Answers will be entirely subjective, should be creative and could be written informally. We know the following facts about the New York trip.
- Lin and Ed are visiting their father, who is a photographer.
- They saw lots of yellow taxis and hundreds of skyscrapers.
- They saw a mounted police officer.
- They thought they saw a woman being robbed, and they chased the robber through Central Park and the Central Park Zoo.
- The chase was actually part of a film being shot, but the director loved what Ed and Lin did. They are now film stars.
**Dino-sauring**

p.16: **Which part of the story do you think is the funniest? Click on a picture and write why.**

Answers will be subjective, but should be justified and could mention the following details about each given option.

- Stretch complaining about his herd of ‘pongy, grown-up apatosauruses’:
  - Stretch is small, so is close by when a loud ‘PARP!’ issues from under one of the adults’ tails.

- Stretch trying to fly:
  - Nutter and Flapper have been helping Stretch to construct some wings so he can get above the herd.
  - Stretch jumps and flaps, but fails to fly.

- Nutter landing on his head:
  - Nutter is demonstrating how Stretch could fall on his head.
    - This doesn’t hurt Nutter, as he has a hard, bony skull.

- A dollop of apatosaurus poo hitting a T-rex in the face:
  - Stretch was lifted into the sky by a group of pterodactyls and didn’t see the T-rex coming.
  - His ‘pongy’ poo was more helpful than flying!

**The Penguins of Madagascar: Good Deed Day**

p.5: **Do you think Marlene was right to be cross with the penguins? Choose an answer and explain why you think this.**

The penguins are visiting Marlene the otter, but have made a big mess of leaves on the way. When they offer to do a good deed for her, Marlene crossly replies, ‘Okay, you can clear up the mess you’ve just made.’ Either answer should be acceptable, as the question asks for an opinion, but responses must be justified appropriately.

For example:

- I think Marlene should be cross because the penguins have made a mess of her home.
- I think Marlene should not be cross because the penguins meant well and will clear up the leaves as their good deed.
**All Hail King Julien: Everyone Loves King Julien**

p.5: Are you surprised by King Julien’s reaction? Select one answer and explain your choice.

King Julien hears a newsreader say, ‘We asked people if they liked King Julien, and nearly everyone said yes!’ He reacts badly because this means some of his people do not like him.

Either answer should be acceptable, as the question asks for an opinion, but responses must be justified appropriately.

For example:

- I am surprised by King Julien’s reaction because most of his people like him and he is very upset by this.
- I am not surprised by King Julien’s reaction because he is the king and I understand that he wants all of his people to like him.

**Flips and Spins**

p.15: What gymnastics move would you like to learn? Click on a picture and write why.

The options given are jumping over a horse, flipping over a bar, doing a headstand and doing a cartwheel.

Any answer should be acceptable, as the question asks for an opinion. It needn’t refer directly to the text, but must be justified appropriately. For example:

- I would like to learn to do a cartwheel as I could use it in dancing.
- I would like to flip over a bar as it would feel like flying!

**Strawberries at School**

p.14: Which of these fruits do you like best? Click on a fruit, and then write some ways that you like to eat or drink it.

The options given are strawberries, raspberries, blackberries, grapes, apples and tomatoes. Answers will be entirely subjective and needn’t refer to the text, but must contain more than one way in which the chosen fruit can be eaten or drunk. For example:

- I have clicked on raspberries because I like to eat them in a fruit salad and with cream.
- I have clicked on tomatoes because I like to eat them raw and on pizzas, and drink them as juice.
Orange B Book Band

Adventure Kids: Escape in Egypt

p.24: What do you think is the spookiest part of the story? Click on a picture and write why.
Answers will be subjective, but should be justified and could mention the following details about each given option.
- Ed and Lin seeing a dark shadow when they enter the pyramid:
  o Lin has been discussing a story about a ‘creepy’ mummy.
  o Ed has said that mummies are not alive.
  o They see a dark shadow behind them. Lin says, ‘It looks like a mummy ... and it is alive!’
- The dark shadow getting closer to Ed and Lin:
  o After first seeing the shadow, Ed and Lin both ran away.
  o The shadow has followed them.
- Ed and Lin screaming:
  o Running away from the shadow, Ed and Lin have entered a big hall and seen a coffin.
- A torch beam being shone on Ed and Lin:
  o Still running away, Ed and Lin have run into a very dark room and crashed into the wall.
  o They believe they have ‘run into the mummy!’
  o The ‘mummy’ then introduces itself as Samir – and Ed realizes ‘mummies can’t talk’.

Goldilocks and the Clever Plan

p.23: When would you most like to visit the bears’ house? Click on a picture and write why.
Answers will be subjective, but should be justified and could mention the following details about each given option.
- I would like to visit when there are traps:
  o The bears set amusing traps around their house to stop visitors who ‘may not be as friendly as Goldilocks’.
  o The traps are a tripwire by a puddle, a big hole surrounded by toy cars and a paint can balanced above a door.
  o The bears forgot to tell each other of their traps and set them off themselves – they make a mess, but are not hurt.
- I would like to visit when the house is as good as new:
  o When the bears next return home, the house has mysteriously been cleaned and mended.
  o The bears are pleased and intrigued.
• I would like to visit when Goldilocks is there:
  o When the bears go inside, they find that Goldilocks has cleaned the house and made a big cake.
  o The bears are very pleased to see her.

**The Penguins of Madagascar: A Kipper for Skipper**

p.6: **Do you think Skipper was fair to blame Rico for not sharing? Select one answer and explain why you think this.**
The penguins are practising team work. Skipper instructs them to work together to lift a large rock, which falls on top of Rico. It is unlikely that answers will conclude that Skipper is being fair, as Rico’s possession of the rock was neither his fault nor nice for him. However, it could be argued that it was understandable for Skipper to be cross as his team work exercises are not going to plan. There is no evidence that Rico is to blame for his accident (other than Skipper’s reaction).

**All Hail King Julien: King Julien’s Jobs**

p.17: **Which power would you most like to have? Select one answer and explain your choice.**
King Julien has found some coffee and believes it will give him magic powers. The options given are super strength and flight. Either answer should be acceptable, as the question asks for an opinion. It needn’t refer directly to the text, but must be justified appropriately. For instance:
- I would like the power of super strength because I could lift heavy things and save people in accidents.
- I would like the power of flight because I could travel anywhere in the world for free.

**Colourful Creatures**

p.24: **Which colourful creature would you most like to take photos of? Click on a pictures and write why.**
The options given are a tiger, peacock, cuttlefish, chameleon, butterfly and frog. Any answer should be acceptable, as the question asks for an opinion. It needn’t refer directly to the text, but must be justified appropriately. For instance:
- I would like to take photos of a tiger because I would like to try and spot it despite its camouflage.
- I would like to take photos of a cuttlefish because I would like to see it change colour.
**Fun Festivals**

p.22: *Which festival would you like to visit? Click on a picture and write why.*

Any answer should be acceptable, as the question asks for an opinion. It needn’t refer directly to the text, but must be justified appropriately and could mention the following details about each given option.

- **The Cheese-rolling Festival:**
  - This is held in May, in England.
  - People race after a cheese as it rolls down a hill.

- **The Tomato Festival:**
  - This is held in summer, in Spain.
  - People throw tomatoes at each other.

- **The Mud Festival:**
  - This is held in summer, in South Korea.
  - Two million people play with, roll in and throw mud.
  - The mud is good for your skin.

- **The Snow Festival:**
  - This is held in winter, in Japan.
  - People make snow and ice sculptures, some bigger than houses.

- **The Moomba Festival:**
  - This is held in March, in Australia.
  - It’s all about having fun with your family.
  - Some people dress up and jump into the river.

- **The Festival of Colour:**
  - This is held in spring, in north India.
  - People throw colourful powder to celebrate spring.

- **The Twins Festival:**
  - This is held in October, in China.
  - Twins from all over the world come together to sing, dance and have fun.
  - People think twins are good luck.

- **The Groundhog Day Festival:**
  - This is held in winter, in the USA.
  - People ask a groundhog if it can see its shadow. If it can, there will be six more weeks of winter before spring comes.

- **The Carabao Festival:**
  - This is held in May, in the Philippines.
  - Animals that usually work on farms get a day off and are dressed up.
  - Farmers have fun.
**My Skateboarding Scrapbook**

p.22: **Rules are important at a skate park. Can you explain the importance of one of these rules? Choose a rule and write your answer.**

The rules given are:
- Wear a helmet and pads.
- Do not go on ramps that are too hard.
- Wait your turn.

Answers should detect that each rule is intended to keep skateboarding safe and fun for everyone.

They could also mention that ‘Wait your turn’ intends to ensure all skateboarders behave fairly to others, or refer to the below quotations regarding wearing a helmet and pads.

- ‘Landing on your pads doesn’t hurt!’
- ‘My pads and helmet kept me from getting badly hurt.’
Orange All Levels

Far From Home
p.14: How do you think Bryan felt when he spilled the ink? Select one word. Then explain why you think this.
The options given are ‘excited’, ‘worried’, ‘happy’ and ‘sad’.
The question asks for an opinion, but it should be justified and draw on the following information.

- Bryan liked to be perfect: he never broke rules, always did his homework and always dressed neatly for school.
- Bryan has recently moved far away from his home, to China, and has started a new school there.
- He has found his first day hard, but is starting to enjoy himself.
- Bryan was trying hard to use the ink in his painting lesson.
- The illustration shows Bryan looking surprised and upset.

Answers should therefore conclude that Bryan felt either ‘worried’ or ‘sad’ when he spilled the ink.

Farming Then and Now
p.15: Would you prefer to live on a farm then or now?
Answers will be subjective, but should be justified and could mention the following details about each option.

- Then:
  - Farmers milked their cows by hand, one at a time.
  - Animals ate root vegetables in the winter.
  - It took 24 workers a whole day to cut 5 acres of barley or wheat, using sythes and sickles.
  - People often celebrated the end of the harvest with music, parades and a party.
  - It took two people to shear a sheep.

- Now:
  - Cows are milked by machines, which is faster and easier.
  - Animals eat silage in the winter, which is made from crops such as corn.
  - Combine harvesters can cut 20 acres of wheat in one hour.
  - It takes one person with electric clippers to shear a sheep.

On the last page, the two guide characters also discuss this question. One chooses ‘now’: ‘Life on a farm was hard before there were machines.’ The other chooses ‘then’: ‘I think it would have been fun in the past! There were more people working on the farm back then.’
Shadow Puppets

p.15: What was your favourite shadow puppet? Select one answer and explain your choice.
The options given are the ‘barking dog’, ‘flying bird’, ‘quacking duck’, ‘butterfly’, ‘rabbit’ and ‘nodding horse’.
Answers will be entirely subjective and needn’t refer closely to the text, but must be justified. For example:

- The barking dog / flying bird / quacking duck was my favourite because I would prefer to use my hands to make a shadow, and make it move.
- The butterfly / rabbit was my favourite because the shadows would be clearer when shapes are cut out from card.
- The nodding horse was my favourite because it would be fun to make as a project.

All Gone!

p.15: Which traditional story is this play like? Click on one picture and explain your choice.
The options given are ‘Goldilocks and the Three Bears’, ‘Cinderella’ and ‘Little Red Riding Hood’. Answers should conclude that the play is most like ‘Goldilocks and the Three Bears’, giving (some of) the following reasons.

- In a café, four customers order food or drink and then leave their tables for a given reason. While they are absent, an old lady takes their seats and consumes their food or drink.
  - The old lady is like Goldilocks, as she takes food or drink that does not belong to her.
- When each customer returns, he or she exclaims, for example, ‘Hey! Where’s my soup?’
  - This is similar to the three bears exclaiming, for example, ‘Who’s been eating my porridge?’
- The customers complain to the waitress, who responds, ‘Oh, be quiet! This isn’t ‘Goldilocks and the Three Bears’!’
**At the Vet’s**

p.14: **Do you like Sara? Click on one answer and explain your choice.**
Either answer should be acceptable as the question asks for an opinion, but it should be justified. We know the following facts about Sara.
- Sara is a Siamese cat, waiting with a group of other animals in a vet’s waiting room.
- She complains that the vet hasn’t apologised for their wait.
- She says that she doesn’t like one of the two vets as he’s too bossy.
- When Sammy (a dog) says he doesn’t want his flu jab, she says the vet ‘has got some new needles’ – ‘really BIG ones’.
- The other animals tell her to stop teasing the dog.
- When a mouse calls her a ‘mean cat’, she threatens to eat it for dinner.
- She also tells a fish she could help with its sore fins as she likes ‘a nice fish supper’.
- She complains that she is very ill (‘It’s my heart ... and my liver ... and my kidneys ... I’ve got pains in all my bones, too’) but the others doubt there’s anything the matter.
- Robbie (a rabbit) calls her a ‘rotten old thing’ and a ‘silly cat’.

**Frog Fight**

p.16: **Do you think Lion was right to let Frog go? Click on one answer and explain your choice.**
Either answer should be acceptable, as the question asks for an opinion. Responses should be justified, though, and may refer to any of the following facts.
- Over the course of the play, several animals have argued about which gets to eat Frog.
- Every time a bigger animal arrived, it claimed Frog as its own.
- When Lion arrived, he offered to judge the matter.
- He allows Frog to escape as the animals continue arguing.
- He tells them, ‘You’ll just have to catch another one!’
Answers could therefore argue either point. For example:
- I think Lion was right because Frog did not want to be eaten and the other animals were just arguing.
- I think Lion was wrong because the animals were hungry and now no one gets to eat.
**When I Was Your Age**

p.11: Do you like what Mike is saying to the children? Choose an answer and explain your choice.

Either answer should be acceptable, as the question asks for an opinion. Responses should be justified, though, and must refer to the kind of things the grown-up Mike has been saying: every time the children discuss their hobbies and mention an achievement, Mike boasts that he could do something far more impressive when he was that age. For example:

‘Ben: Do you like football, Mike? I love it.
    I scored three goals yesterday.
Mike: That’s nothing. When I was your age I once scored ten goals.
    Ben: Oh.’

Answers are therefore likely to conclude that what Mike is saying isn’t nice, although they could argue that he’s attempting to show a shared interest in the children’s hobbies, or that what he’s saying is funny.

**Little Red Riding Hoody**

p.15: What do you think Little Red Riding Hoody should say to Grandpa? Click on one answer and explain your choice.

The options given are: ‘Ha, ha!’, ‘Sorry.’ And ‘Help! I’m off!’ Any answer should be acceptable as the question asks for an opinion. Responses should be justified, though, and may refer to any of the following facts.

- Reversing the traditional tale, Little Red Riding Hoody (a squirrel) hears Foxy ordering chicken and chips for his grandmother and decides to steal it.
- She runs to the grandmother’s house and says she’s a friend of Foxy’s.
- Granny lets her in, and then goes out to find her a snack.
- Red Riding Hoody puts on Granny’s nightie, waits for Foxy to arrive and then eats all of Granny’s dinner.
- She is found out when Granny and Grandpa arrive home, and Grandpa asks, ‘What have you got to say for yourself?’

Therefore, as the question asks what Red Riding Hoody should say, answers are most likely to conclude that she should apologise. However, she actually yells ‘Help! I’m off!’ and laughing would also be in character.
Fun and Mix-ups!

p.16: Which comic strip is your favourite? Click on a picture and write why.
Answers will be subjective, but should be justified and could mention the following details about each story presented as an option.

- Peach de Punch:
  - Peach (a cat) steals her owner’s doughnut but denies it. She is then forgiven for giving some of it back.
  - Peach is then asked to get rid of mice. Instead of chasing them away, she complains about the humans’ loudness and convinces the mice they want to move.

- Little Cutie:
  - A duck sneaks past her teacher and evades an octopus and some squirrels to fetch her fish friend a burger.
  - The fish asks, ‘Where’s the ketchup?’
  - The duck then puts the fish into the burger bun, adding ketchup.

- New at the Zoo:
  - A new zookeeper makes lots of mistakes.
  - In Part 1, he tries to turn the bats the right way up, gives fish to the lions instead of the sealions, gives parrots rather than carrots to the rabbits, and gives pyjamas rather than bananas to the monkeys.
  - In Part 2, he gives shampoo rather than bamboo to the pandas, gives flutes rather than fruits to the baboons, and feeds the peacocks to the bears rather than feeding ‘the peacocks and the bears, too’.

- Vern and Lettuce:
  - Vern (a sheep) uses his fleece to knit jumpers for the many children of Lettuce (a rabbit).
  - This makes Vern cold.
  - He and Lettuce then knit the small jumpers into one big one for Vern, with pockets for the young rabbits.

- Sausage and Carrots:
  - Sausage finds a genie and gets three wishes.
  - He wishes Carrot were there to help him choose.
  - He wishes he hadn’t wished for that.
  - He then wishes he hadn’t said that, wasting his final wish.
**Superman and the Robots**

p.15: **Who would you like to save you? Click on a picture and write why.**

Answers will be subjective, but should be justified and could mention the following details about each character presented as an option.

- **Superman:**
  - He is the ‘most powerful superhero ever!’
  - He saves a city from a meteorite using only one hand.
  - He catches the cars thrown by the robots that invade the city, and fights the robots.

- **Supergirl:**
  - She is a member of ‘Superman’s super family’.
  - She saves Jimmy Olsen (a young boy) from the robots by flying away with him, and Jimmy becomes enamoured with her.
  - She helps Superman to fight the robots.

- **Superboy:**
  - He is a member of ‘Superman’s super family’.
  - He helps Superman to fight the robots.

- **Superdog:**
  - He is a member of ‘Superman’s super family’.
  - He helps Superman to fight the robots.
Turquoise A Book Band

**Adventure Kids: Run in the Rainforest**

p.24: **Which part of the story do you think was most exciting? Click on a picture and write why.**

Answers will be subjective, but should be justified and could mention the following details about each given option.

- **Ed and Lin getting off the boat:**
  - Lin and Ed are visiting their father, who is a photographer, in the rainforest in South America.
  - As they get off the boat, they notice lots of eyes watching them from the rainforest, and that the birds and animals are very noisy.

- **Ed and Lin being chased by a jaguar:**
  - Ed and Lin see a huge, odd-looking jaguar coming after them.
  - They run (followed by their father), and seem to be getting away from it.

- **Ed and Lin meeting the villagers:**
  - Ed and Lin have run into a village full of people who are dressed up, dancing and singing.
  - They warn the villagers that a huge animal is right behind them.

- **The leopard costume being taken off:**
  - The ‘jaguar’ is revealed to be two boys in a costume they made for their festival that day.
  - Ed and Lin are invited to join in.

**Goldilocks and the Porridge Problem**

p.24: **Which kind of porridge would you most like to try? Click on a picture and write why.**

The options given are lemon porridge, spicy porridge, chocolate porridge and banana porridge. Any answer should be acceptable, as the question asks for an opinion. It needn’t refer directly to the text, but must be justified appropriately. For instance:

- I would like to try lemon porridge I think it would taste like sour sweets.
- I would like to try spicy porridge because I love spicy food!
**Dino-splashing**

p.24: **Which part of the story do you think looks most fun? Click on a picture and write why.**

Answers will be subjective, but should be justified and could mention the following details about each given option.

- Stretch, Nutter and Flapper running down the hill:
  - The friends run down to the river to splash into the water.
  - They do not yet know that the river has dried up, leaving only mud.

- Stretch and Nutter running up the apatosaurus’s back:
  - The three friends are on a quest to get their water back.
  - The stretching apatosaurus reaches right to the top of the waterfall’s cliff.

- Stretch, Nutter and Flapper floating along the river:
  - A T-rex attacked the friends, but they forced him to tumble into the riverbed, crashing through the rocks blocking it.
  - To escape the angry T-rex, they leap into the now-flowing river and are carried along by it.

- Stretch, Nutter and Flapper going down the waterfall:
  - The friends forgot that the river ended in a waterfall, and are swept down it.

**The Penguins of Madagascar: Penguins to the Rescue**

p.15: **Do you think Dr Blowhole was right to want revenge? Select one answer and explain why you think this.**

Either answer should be acceptable, as the question asks for an opinion. Responses should be justified, though, and may refer to any of the following facts.

- We are told that the penguins once escaped from ‘evil Dr Blowhole’, a dolphin super-villain.
- Dr Blowhole has now kidnapped King Julien, and the penguins have set out to rescue him.
- They got past the patrol lobsters but were then caught.
- Dr Blowhole explains that he wants revenge because he used to do tricks for humans: ‘I had to jump through a ring of fire and I hated it!’
- He plans to melt the ice in the Arctic Ocean so humans all have to swim to survive.

Answers could therefore argue either point. For example:

- I don’t think he was right to want revenge because he is evil and will harm a lot of innocent people and animals with his plan.
- I think he was right to want revenge because the humans were cruel to make him do such dangerous tricks.
**All Hail King Julien: King Julien and the Rain Dance**

p.11: **Who do you think was correct about what had mended Boom Box? Select an image and explain your choice.**

King Julien’s boom box breaks, and King Julien sobs that it’s ‘dead’. Timo the scientist takes it to his lab and puts new batteries into it. The options given are King Julien saying ‘it’s a miracle’ and Timo saying ‘it’s science’.

Answers are most likely to conclude that Timo is right about what mended Boom Box, as readers see him mending it. However, responses could also express understanding that the batteries must seem like a miracle to King Julien, who doesn’t understand what they are, or could suggest that Timo’s understanding is itself a miracle.

**Cars, Cars, Cars**

p.23: **Which car would you most like to drive? Click on a picture and write why.**

The options given are an early car, a solar car, a race car, a new Mini, a pink stretch jeep and a flying car. Any answer should be acceptable, as the question asks for an opinion. It needn’t refer directly to the text, but must be justified appropriately. For instance:

- I would like to drive a race car because they go really fast.
- I would like to drive a flying car so I could zoom over the traffic.

**Tricking Our Eyes**

p.23: **Which of these optical illusions do you think is most clever? Click on a picture and write why.**

The options given are ‘the telephone boxes’ (against which an artist has used paint to camouflage himself) and ‘the ice cliffs’ (which an artist has drawn, in perspective, on the pavement). Answers will be entirely subjective, but should be justified. For example:

- I think the telephone boxes are most clever because the man had to paint himself without being able to see himself against the background very well.
- I think the ice cliffs are most clever because they look really convincing, as though you could fall off them!
Welcome to the Circus!

p.17: Which circus skill would you most like to try? Click on a picture and explain why.
Answers will be subjective, but should be justified and could mention the following details about each experiment.

- **Juggling:**
  - Jugglers throw and catch lots of balls, rings and/or clubs.
  - Sometimes, they work in a group.

- **Swinging on the trapeze:**
  - A trapeze is like a big swing.
  - Trapeze artists do stunts, sometimes jumping between trapezes or to each other.

- **Being an acrobat:**
  - Acrobats are flexible and can bend into amazing shapes.
  - They also balance on each other, and can jump from and onto human pyramids.

- **Being a clown:**
  - Clowns do funny things to make people laugh, often without speaking – they trip up, fall over and play tricks.
  - Sometimes they juggle and do trapeze acts, too.

- **Tightrope walking:**
  - A tightrope is a rope or wire stretched high above the ground.
  - Tightrope walker balance on it while walking, turning, standing on one leg and/or jumping.
**Pete’s Peculiar Pet Shop: Just the Job**

p.13: **What do you think would be the best job for Pete? Click on a job and explain your choice.**

The options given are a vet, a zoo keeper, a teacher and a farmer.

Answers will be subjective, but should be justified and take account of the following preceding events.

- Pete had a job as a gardener but was fired as he let the slugs eat the cabbages – so they befriended him and followed him home.
- Pete had a job as a bus driver but was fired as he let stray animals ride on the bus to keep warm – so they befriended him and followed him home.
- Pete has now taken in so many animals in need of homes that there is no room left for him.

**The Sharma Family: What’s Out There?**

p.3: **What would you most like to do in the field? Click on one answer and explain why.**

The options given are ‘make the fire’, ‘put up the tent’ and ‘play with Puff’ (Puff is a dog).

Any answer should be acceptable, as the question asks for an opinion. It needn’t refer directly to the text, but must be justified appropriately. For instance:

- I would like to play with Puff because I love dogs.
- I would like to put up the tent because I think I would be better at it than Dad!
- I would like to make the fire because I would want to be helpful.

**Young Robin Hood: Hit and Miss**

p.24: **Which part of the story did you like the most? Click on a picture and write why.**

Answers will be subjective, but should be justified and could mention the following details about each given option.

- When Robin made the arrows:
  - While at the market, young Robin sees an archery contest and considers it the most exciting thing he has ever seen.
  - He runs home and makes a bow and arrows to use.
  - The bow and arrows aren’t very well made.
• When Robin put corks on the arrows:
  o Robin’s aim is so bad that his shooting becomes dangerous, especially for his cat.
  o Robin appeases Mum by adding corks, although she is not convinced this will help.
• When Mum bought Robin a bow:
  o Robin’s shooting becomes so hazardous that Mum takes his bow and arrows away, leaving Robin miserable and bored.
  o After making him come shopping, Mum buys Robin a proper bow and arrows as a surprise.
• When Robin learned how to use the bow:
  o To ensure he learns properly, Mum enrolls Robin in the Sherwood Archery Club.
  o He isn’t very good at first, but ‘it wasn’t very long before he was very good indeed!’

Thunderbirds Are Go: Skyhook

p.24: Which character would you like to ask a question? What question would you ask them? Choose a character and type your question.
Answers will be subjective, but should show understanding of appropriate questions to ask the chosen character. The options are:
• John:
  o He is the first to spot the damage made by a big storm to the weather station Cirrus, which is now floating into space.
  o He knows that, if Cirrus gets too high, its balloons will burst and send it crashing to Earth.
  o He tries to warn the captain, and then tells the team.
  o After his brothers’ attempts fail, he uses Thunderbird 5 to catch Cirrus just in time.
• Scott:
  o He is first to set off to rescue Cirrus, in Thunderbird 1.
  o After two of his brothers have failed in their attempts, he uses a hook to grab Cirrus, and crosses to it.
  o Then an energy flash hits and he falls from the weather station.
  o He saves himself and returns to base.
• The captain of Cirrus:
  o He isn’t worried by John’s warning.
  o He has no safety gear as he didn’t think he needed it.
  o He thinks Thunderbird 5 is great.
**Extreme Living**

p.23: **If you had to live in an extreme environment for a few months, which would you choose? Click on a picture and write why.**

Any answer should be acceptable, as the question asks for an opinion. It needn’t refer directly to the text, but must be justified appropriately and could mention the following facts about each given option.

- **The desert:**
  - Deserts are very dry and some are very hot.
  - Not many plants grow there, so there is not much food.
  - Camels live there.
  - People who live there wear long, loose clothes.
  - They often move from place to place to find food and water.

- **The rainforest:**
  - Tropical rainforests are very hot and very wet.
  - There are trees and rivers.
  - Jaguars and fish live there.
  - People who live there are often good at climbing trees and fishing to find food.
  - Some wear no clothes as it is so hot and the trees protect them from the sun.

- **The Arctic:**
  - The Arctic is very cold, and covered in ice and snow. It is very cold.
  - Polar bears live there.
  - People who live there wear clothes made from animal fur to keep them warm.
  - Some build houses out of snow, called igloos. They are very warm inside.

**Can You Do This?**

p.23: **Click on the trick you found the hardest. Write about what happened when you tried it.**

The selection will be subjective, but answers should accurately describe the reader attempting to perform the chosen trick in some detail. All the tricks in the book are given as options:

- **The Flamingo:** Stand on one foot with your eyes closed to test your balance.
- **The Monkey:** Touch your left ear with your right hand and hold your nose with your left. Swap arms repeatedly, as quickly as possible.
Pat and Rub: Pat your head with one hand while rubbing your tummy with the other.

Finger-and-foot challenge: Move one foot clockwise in a circle while writing the number 6 in the air with your finger.

Mirrors: Trace a word in the air with your fingers, writing it forwards with your writing hand and backwards with your other hand at the same time.

Tricky Fingers: Move your little finger and then your pointing finger away from your other fingers. Then separate your pointing and middle fingers from your ring and little fingers.

Find Your Fingers: Cross your arms and clasp your hands. Look at your hands in different ways, and then try to wiggle a finger chosen by a friend.

Hole in Your Hand: Look through a tube held up next to your hand to see a hole seem to appear in your hand.

Living in a Castle

p.23: Which of these jobs would you like to do? Click on an image and write why.

Answers will be subjective, but should be justified and could mention the following details about each given option.

- Soldier:
  - Soldiers guarded the gatehouse to the castle, controlling the drawbridge and portcullis.
  - They shot arrows and threw rocks, boiling water or sand at attackers from the castle walls.
  - They also guarded prisoners in the dungeon.
  - They wore chain mail and armour.

- Jester:
  - The jesters made the lord and his guests laugh.
  - They wore odd, bright costumes and did tricks.

- Lady-in-waiting:
  - Ladies-in-waiting helped the lady of the castle with getting cleaned and dressed.
  - They also entertained her by playing music.
  - They were considered special servants.

- Marshal:
  - Marshals took care of the castle horses.
  - They didn’t have to muck out stables or mend horseshoes, as stable boys and farriers did that.

- Falconer:
  - Falconers trained hawks to hunt.

- Water keeper:
  - Water keepers looked after rivers and ponds.
  - They also had to stop people stealing the fish.
**Turquoise All Levels**

**Hunter’s Money Jar**

p.16: *If you were Hunter, would you wait? How would you feel? Select one answer and explain your feelings about it.*

Hunter has been saving up for a skateboard, but doesn’t yet have enough for the one he wants. The shopkeeper suggests Hunter buy a cheaper skateboard, but Hunter decides to wait and save more money.

Answers will be entirely subjective and needn’t refer to the text (other than to understand the context of the question). However, the reader’s feelings about their decision must be described.

For example:
- I would wait. Waiting until I had more money would make me feel happy, as I would know I would get the skateboard I wanted and it would be a better one.
- I would not wait. Buying the cheaper skateboard would make me feel better because I would be able to learn on it straight away.

**After Dark**

p.23: *What else would you like to find out? Choose one kind of animal and write a question about it.*

The options given are sloths, bats, aye-ayes, owls, possums and badgers. Answers will be subjective, but should show understanding of appropriate questions to ask about the chosen animal. For example:
- How do bats make the beeping noise they use to find insects?
- Where does the name ‘aye-aye’ come from?
- Where in the world do possums live?

**Origami**

p.21: *Which origami creature do you feel you would most like to make? Select one answer and explain your choice.*

The options given are a ladybird, dog, bird and crane. Answers will be entirely subjective and needn’t refer closely to the text, but must be justified.
For example:
- I would like to make a ladybird because I think it looks cute with the dots on it.
- I would like to make a dog because the folding looks easy.
- I would like to make a bird because I think it might fly like a paper aeroplane.
- I would like to make a crane because I would like to be like the woman in the painting.

**The Best Bet**

p.4: **What do you like playing on at the park? Click on one picture and explain your choice.**
The options given are a swing, a slide and a roundabout. Answers will be entirely subjective and will not refer to the text, but should be justified and draw on children’s real-life experiences. For example:
- I like playing on the swings because it feels like flying.
- I like playing on the slide because it is exciting to go down quickly.
- I like playing on the roundabout because I can spin until I feel dizzy!

**The Billy Goats Gruff**

p.19: **Do you think Big should have butted the Troll? Click on an answer and explain your choice.**
Either answer should be acceptable, as the question asks for an opinion. Responses should be justified, though, and may refer to any of the following facts.
- The three Billy Goats Gruff need to cross a bridge, under which lives a troll who likes to eat goats.
  - The goats came up with a plan that involved Little and then Middle Billy Goat Gruff crossing, and persuading the troll to wait for the next, bigger goat.
  - Big Billy Goat Gruff was big enough to stand up to the troll and butt him into the river.
  
  Big is therefore the more sympathetic character, as he butts the troll to defend himself and his two smaller siblings. However, answers could argue that:
  - The troll was simply following his nature, and was hungry;
  - The goats had tricked him;
  - Violence is never acceptable.
Rap-Punzel

p.20: Do you like the ending to the play? Click on an answer and explain your choice.
Either answer should be acceptable, as the question asks for an opinion. Responses should be justified, though, and may refer to any of the following facts.

- Rap-Punzel lives in a tall tower block and loves to rap.
- Many boys want to take her out, but she turns them all down because they offer her things in which she isn’t interested: bling, cakes, cleverness and gadgets.
- Then a new boy who’s into hip hop arrives, and ‘Rap-Punzel fell in love’.
- The two perform together on their wedding day.

Answers could argue either point.
For example:

- I like the ending to the play because Rap-Punzel finds someone who like music too.
- I don’t like the ending to the play because Rap-Punzel said she just wanted to chill with her mates, and she looks too young to get married.

One-way Ticket to Mars

p.5: Where would you choose to go on holiday? Choose one place and explain your choice.
The options given (and being considered by the characters in the story) are Spain, Greenland and Mars. Any answer should be acceptable, as the question asks for an opinion. It needn’t refer directly to the text, but must be justified appropriately. For instance:

- I would choose to go to Spain because it is hot and sunny.
- I would choose to go to Greenland because it is snowy and different.
- I would choose to go to Mars because it would be an adventure!

Tricking the Tiger

p.15: Do you like Tiger? Choose an answer and explain your choice.
Either answer should be acceptable as the question asks for an opinion, but it should be justified.
We know the following facts about Tiger.

- Tiger likes eating foxes, and a family of foxes are the main characters of the play.
- He behaves charmingly towards the foxes in conversation, inviting them back to his den for tea – clearly intending to eat them.
- The foxes trick him into allowing them to return to their den by saying they’ll fetch their other (non-existent) cubs.
- Tiger finally realises he’s been tricked.

Answers could therefore conclude that Tiger is cruel for trying to eat the foxes, stupid for being tricked or simply following his nature and trying to use his wits.

*Where, Oh Where is Mrs Brown?*

p.20: **Which type of party food do you like best and why? Click on one picture and explain your choice.**

The options given are sandwiches, biscuits and a chocolate cake. Answers will be entirely subjective and will not refer to the text, but should be justified and draw on children’s real-life experiences. For example:

- Sandwiches are my favourite because they can have lots of different fillings.
- Biscuits are my favourite because they are sweet and crunchy.
- Chocolate cake is my favourite because I love chocolate!

*Surprise!*

p.16: **Which comic strip character would you like to find out more about? Click on a picture and write a question you would ask the character.**

The characters presented as options are Lettuce, Peach, Nara, Little Cutie, New Boy and Stanley Sausage. Questions could be almost anything, but should show an awareness of the character chosen and could refer to the following details.

- Lettuce is a rabbit. She tells Mr Mole he can’t dig to China from the park, and he proves her wrong by digging up a china tea set. Lettuce, her children and the moles use it to have a picnic.
- Peach is a cat owned by Nara. Nara excludes Peach while planning a surprise party for her pet, and Peach is upset until she learns why.
- New Boy is a new employee at a zoo where he makes constant mix-ups, including feeding seagulls rather than the eagles, putting antelopes rather than envelopes in the post and thinking zebras are dirty horses.
• Little Cutie is a duck. Her male friends exclude her from butterfly spotting until she happens across a rare specimen. When they finally include her and ask her to ‘put everything in a notebook’, she mistakenly squashes the butterfly between the pages.
• Sausage sneezes while being painted by Carrot, crashing through his painting.

**Jimmy’s Super Watch**

p.2: **Which of the Superpets do you most want to read about? Click on a picture and write why.**
The Superpets are Beppo the Super Monkey, Streaky the Super Cat, Comet the Super Horse, Krypto the Super Dog and Fuzzy the Super Mouse. Any answer should be acceptable, as the question asks for an opinion. No information on the Superpets, other than their names and images, has been given so far.
Purple A Book Band

Pete’s Peculiar Pet Shop: The Wrong Jumper

p.24: Which peculiar pet would you buy from Pet’s pet shop? Click on the pet, and then type why.

The options given are a crab, frog, giraffe, snake, monkey, elephant, kangaroo and griffin. Any answer should be acceptable, as the question asks for an opinion. It needn’t refer directly to the text, but must be justified appropriately. For instance:

- I would buy the griffin as he is clever.
- I would buy a monkey because they are funny when they take the lady’s glasses!
- I would buy the kangaroo as I would like to go for a ride in its pouch.

The Sharma Family: Stop That Dog!

p.24: Would you like to have a dog like Puff? Click on one answer and explain why.

Answers will be subjective, but should be justified and could mention the following details about Puff.

- Puff appears to be a friendly, cheerful and energetic pet.
- He was meant to enter a dog race at the fair, but ran off in the wrong direction so Arun lost him.
- While being chased, Puff:
  - knocked over a bookstall (that Dad then had to tidy up),
  - crashed into a man carrying a large cake (for which Mum then had to pay),
  - ran up and then slid down a helter skelter,
  - stole a man’s chicken burger (that Mum then had to replace).
- Arun then lures Puff into running, and winning, the next dog race by standing at the end with another chicken burger.

Yun and the Fire Demon

p.24: What was the most exciting part of the story? Click on a picture and write why.

Answers will be subjective, but should be justified and could mention the following details about each given option.
Diving into the blue lake inside the volcano:
  - Yun starts another adventure with the Dragon Princess when her father’s magic pearl is stolen by the Fire Demon.
  - The Fire Demon’s palace is at the bottom of the lake.
  - Yun can breathe underwater because of his dragon charm.

The Dragon Princess facing the fire spirits:
  - The spirits guard the Fire Demon’s palace.
  - The princess (transformed into a dragon) roars so fiercely that she puts out the spirits.

Yun leaping to catch the pearl:
  - Yun has tricked the Fire Demon by shouting, ‘Quick, run! The water is coming!’
  - The Demon jumps and drops the pearl.

Yun and the Dragon Princess escaping:
  - Having angered the Fire Demon and more fire spirits, Yun and the princess dash away.
  - They reach the passage back to the lake ‘just in time’.

Returning the pearl to the Dragon King:
  - The king is grateful, so gives Yun the power of flight.

Young Robin Hood: Marian to the Rescue

p.10: **Who would you invite to your house? Click on one picture and explain why.**

The options given are Robin and Marian. Answers will be subjective, but must be justified and could mention the following details about each character.

- **Robin (who will become Robin Hood)** is a young boy who befriends Marian. He seems kind, friendly and enthusiastic. We know from the previous book in the series that he’s very keen on archery and initially pursued the hobby quite dangerously.

- **Marian ‘seemed very well behaved at first’,** but makes a terrible mess while playing, bouncing on furniture and doing handstands. She then drives Mum’s cart recklessly and is the ‘most daring and noisy’ child in the park.
Thunderbirds Are Go: Fireflash

p.24: **Who do you think did the most to save Fireflash? Select one image and explain your choice.**

Answers will be subjective, but should be justified and show understanding of the actions taken by the chosen character. They are most likely to conclude that Kayo did most to save Fireflash.

The options are:

- **Kayo:**
  - She is a passenger on Fireflash (a new hypersonic plane).
  - She sees that the other passengers’ oxygen masks put them to sleep and decides to investigate.
    - In the cockpit, she finds the co-pilot unconscious and a cloaking device attached to the control panel, so she removes the cloaking device.
    - She runs a face check on the captain and finds that he is really The Hood, an old enemy.
    - She contacts International Rescue for help, and stands up to The Hood – but he smashes a fuel tank and escapes.
    - She then pilots the plane to try and land it safely, but one wheel is broken and the plane runs out of fuel before she can do so.
    - Scott tells her the Fireflash passengers owe their lives to her.

- **Virgil:**
  - He flies to Fireflash in Thunderbird 2.
  - He uses Thunderbird 2’s cables to catch Fireflash when its fuel runs out, and puts it gently on the runway.

All About Mummies

p.24: **What would you most like to find out more about? Click on a picture, and write why.**

Answers will be subjective, but should be justified and could refer to details in the chosen chapter. For example:

- I would like to know more about Egyptian kings and queens because I would like to know what they did during their lives as well as what happened after their deaths.
- I would like to know more about making mummies because I want to know why some body parts were put into jars.
- I would like to know more about the pyramids because I would like to visit them.
- I would like to know more about Tutankhamun because he died very young and I would like to know why.
When Animals Attack

p.24: **Which of these animals did you like reading about the most? Click on one picture and write why.**

Answers will be subjective, but should be justified and could mention the following details about each given option.

- **Anaconda**
  - The anaconda is the world’s biggest snake, and can squeeze the breath from a person.
  - It can weigh up to 225 kg and measure up to 9 m.
  - If it attacks, you should fight back.

- **Grizzly bear**
  - The grizzly bear has a powerful bite, strong arms and sharp claws.
  - It can weigh up to 350 kg, measure up to 2.5 m and run at up to 48 km an hour.
  - If you see one from a distance, you should make a lot of noise – but, if it’s close, you should back away slowly, not looking at it, or you could play dead.

- **Leopard**
  - The leopard’s camouflage makes them hard to see.
  - It can weigh up to 80 kg, measure up to 3.3 m and run at up to 60 km an hour.
  - If you meet one, do not try to run away; you could stare at it, make yourself look big and shout loudly but calmly.

- **Saltwater crocodile**
  - This crocodile grabs its victim and pulls it underwater. It can easily crush a human skull with its bite.
  - It can weigh up to 450 kg, measure up to 5 m and swim at up to 40 km an hour.
  - If you are near an area where they live, you should stay away from the water and never turn your back. If chased, run away quickly as the crocodile is slower on land.
Purple B Book Band

Pete’s Peculiar Pet Shop: I Want a Unicorn!

p.6: **Who is most worried about meeting the king? Click on the picture, and write how you know.**

The princess has decided she wants a unicorn, so the king has gone to Pete’s Peculiar Pet Shop. Answers should conclude that Mopsy is most worried, based on the following (limited) evidence.

- When the king appears, the characters react as follows.
  - “Your Majesty,” said Pete, bowing low.
  - “Your Majesty,” said the Griffin, bowing his head.
  - “Your Majesty,” said Mopsy, trying to curtsy.’
- The illustration shows that Mopsy, unlike the other two characters, looks nervous.

p.24: **Who would you most like to be friends with? Click on a picture, and write why.**

The options given are Pete, the princess, Sally and the unicorn. Answers will be subjective, but must be justified and could mention the following details about each character.

- Pete is a kindly old man who loves animals and runs a peculiar pet shop.
- Sally is a little girl who has a unicorn, but no space to keep it. She says she knows her unicorn would love to live in a big garden. She befriends the princess and teaches her how to look after the unicorn.
- The princess starts the story as a demanding, spoilt little girl, prone to shouting ‘I **always** get what I want!’ When she is befriended by Sally, however, she learns to be kind and to share.
- The unicorn runs away from the princess’s shouts and screams, and refuses to go near her until she learns to be kind.

The Sharma Family: Best Birthday Ever!

p.24: **Who would you most like to go to the beach with? Click on one answer and explain why.**

The Sharma family is at the beach because it is Ana’s birthday. Answers will be subjective, but should be justified and could mention the following details about each character given as an option.

- Ana is the oldest sibling. Her favourite animals are snakes, and she is very knowledgeable about them. She takes a huge toy snake to the beach but then loses it. She enjoys playing football with Arun.
• Arun is next oldest. He’s clever and likes to make jokes. He likes paddling in the sea, playing with Puff and playing football with Ana.
• Puff is a dog. He seems a friendly and energetic pet, and protects Asha from being hit by the football. He also seems to have found Ana’s snake in the sand – but it turns out to be real slowworm!
• Asha is a young child. She enjoys building sandcastles and then falls asleep. She accidentally buried Ana’s toy snake.

**Yun and the Giant Bird**

p.5: **What would you do if you were Yun? Click on a picture and write why.**
Yun has encountered villagers fleeing their homes, which are being attacked by a giant bird. The options given are to run away, talk to the bird, chase the bird away or call the Dragon King (who has helped Yun in other adventure stories and given him mystical powers). Answers will be subjective, but should be justified. For example:
- I would talk to the bird because it might have a reason for attacking the houses.
- I would call the Dragon King as he would use his powers to help.

**Young Robin Hood: The Great Escape**

p.24: **Which part of the story did you think was the most exciting? Click on one picture and write why.**
Answers will be subjective, but should be justified and could mention the following details about each given option.
- When Mum was thrown in the dungeon:
  - Mum is arrested for saying, ‘Grrr, that horrible Sheriff. I wish the nasty man was here so I could tell him off.’
  - Once in the castle, she scolds him: ‘You’re a very bad man, Sheriff! People are starving because of your taxes.’
  - Even as she’s dragged away, she yells, ‘You won’t get away with this!’
- When they found the secret door:
  - Determined to rescue Mum, Robin and Marian find a plan of the castle in the library and spot a secret door.
  - They then find the tiny door in real life and creep down a dark, narrow passage to the castle.
- When they escaped in the horse and cart:
  - After Robin and Marian free Mum from her cell, they flee the castle while being chased by guards.
They see an empty horse and cart in the castle yard and jump in. Marian drives off at a great speed through the gate-house, but the guards and Sheriff are gaining on them.

- When they trapped the Sheriff:
  - As they pass through the gate-house, Robin fires an arrow at a rope holding the gate open.
  - The arrow severs the rope and the gate crashes shut, trapping the Sheriff and allowing Robin, Mum and Marian to escape to Sherwood Forest.

**Thunderbirds Are Go: Tunnels of Time**

p.5: **What would you do next? Select one answer and explain your choice.**

While on a rescue mission, Gordon spots a huge stone head with an inscription saying ‘This is the Pyramid of the Laughing King. If you dare to disturb my peace, you will join me in my tomb!’

Either answer should be acceptable, as the question asks for an opinion, but responses must be justified appropriately. For example:

- I would leave the pyramid alone because there is a curse on it and it may be dangerous.
- I would explore the pyramid because it would be interesting and exciting, and there may be treasure in it.

**Chocolate!**

p.23: **Which would you most like to try? Click on a picture and write why.**

The options given are a chocolate fountain, chilli chocolate and a chocolate pizza. Any answer should be acceptable, as the question asks for an opinion. It needn’t refer directly to the text, but must be justified appropriately. For instance:

- I would most like to try the chocolate fountain as I could dip anything in the chocolate.
- I would most like to try chilli chocolate because I like spicy food.
- I would most like to try the chocolate pizza because I don’t like real cheese.
Star Wars: What Is a Wookiee?

p.21: Which of these Star Wars creatures do you like most? Click on a picture and write why.

Any answer should be acceptable, as the question asks for an opinion. It needn’t refer directly to the text, but must be justified appropriately and could mention the following details about each given option.

- C-3PO:
  - He is a droid.
  - He is a talking machine.
  - He has lived on many planets.

- R2-D2:
  - He is a droid.
  - His voice sounds like whistles and beeps, but C-3PO can understand him.
  - He has all sorts of tools, and can fix anything.

- Chewbacca:
  - He is a tall, furry alien called a Wookiee.
  - He flies a spaceship with his best friend, Han Solo (a human).

- Jar Jar Binks:
  - He is a friendly alien, who is good friends with Padmé (a human).
  - He comes from an underwater city and often falls over on land.
  - He uses his long tongue to catch food.

- Watto:
  - He is a blue alien with wings on his back.
  - He has a shop that sells bits of old machines.

- Jawas:
  - They are small aliens with shiny yellow eyes and faces hidden under their hoods.
  - They find and sell droids and parts of machines. Once, they sold R2-D2.

- Ewoks:
  - They are small, furry creatures.
  - They live in wooden houses, high up in the trees in the deep forest.

- Yoda:
  - He has green skin and big, pointy ears.
  - No one knows what kind of alien he is or where he comes from.
  - He is very old and wise.
**Pirates: Life at Sea**

p.21: **Which pirate do you think sounds the most interesting?**

**Click on a picture and write why.**

Any answer should be acceptable, as the question asks for an opinion, but it must be justified appropriately and could mention the following details about each given option.

- **Captain Kidd:**
  - He was paid to hunt pirates but started to rob ships himself.

- **Ching Shih:**
  - Rare for being a female pirate, she was in charge of many ships and other pirates.

- **Edward Teach:**
  - Also known as Blackbeard, he tied bits of burning rope to his hat and beard to look scary.

- **Bart Roberts:**
  - Also known as Black Bart, he dressed like a gentleman and robbed over 400 ships in under four years.
**The Winner’s Choice**  
_Do you think the earthquake will have changed Florence’s ideas? Select one answer and explain your reasons._

Either answer should be acceptable as the question asks for an opinion, but it should be justified and could refer to the following details from the text.

- A school football team has won money for their school, and has been trying to decide how to spend it.
- The children have come up with only frivolous ideas, such as a chocolate fountain, a skate park and glow-in-the-dark socks.
- Florence has not agreed with any of the ideas, and has pointed out the impracticalities of some of them.
- An earthquake then shakes the whole town.
- As Florence walks home with her mother, she sees that a neighbouring school’s football pitch has been destroyed by the earthquake.
- She is very shocked, and ends the page on which the activity is located by saying, ‘I have an idea.’

Answers may, therefore, conclude that Florence’s ideas will have changed, because of what she says and because she has now seen serious problems that may make the team’s ideas seem silly (whether or not they also predict that she will suggest helping a school other than her own). However, they could detect that Florence was never very keen on the team’s funny ideas, and that she always wanted to spend the money on something worthwhile. Alternatively, it could also argued that seeing disaster may make Florence more determined to have fun and enjoy herself.

**Living Lights**  
_Which new fact did you find most interesting? Select the section where it is found, and explain the fact._

Each chapter in the book is an option given. Answers will be subjective, but should show accuracy and an interest in at least one fact from the book. The fact should then be explained in the reader’s own words, and could be reported in a way that incorporates personal response.
For example:
- My favourite fact is about fish: The angler fish uses a light on its head as bait to fish for its food.
- My favourite fact is about fungi: I think it would be amazing to see mushrooms glowing like torches in a forest.

**Wild Weather** *Title only available to subscribers of Pro Independent and Ultimate packages*

p.23: **What damage does wild weather cause? Select one type of weather and give an example of damage it causes.**
Answers should mention at least one accurate type of damage done by the type of weather chosen. The damage mentioned could be an example from the book or another sensible suggestion that is not mentioned in the text. For example:
- This is an example of the damage mudslides can cause: Mudslides can bury thousands of people and homes.
- This is an example of the damage hailstones can cause: Hailstones can smash things where they hit, and freeze plant and animal life.
- This is an example of the damage floods can cause: They can make rivers burst their banks and wash away people and homes.

**Doctor, Doctor!**

p.5: **Who do you like best and why? Click on one picture and explain your choice.**
Any answer should be acceptable as the question asks for an opinion, but it must be justified appropriately and could mention the following details about each given option.
- The Doctor:
  - He gives joke answers to all the problems his patients have. He could therefore be judged to be very sarcastic or (more likely) very stupid.
- The Nurse:
  - She has said nothing so far other than ‘Next, please!’; and she says it regularly. This means that none of the patients seen so far has actually been treated.
- Patient 3:
  - He says, ‘I swallowed a bone.’ The bone is visible in his throat. When the doctor says, ‘Are you choking?’, he answers, ‘No, I really did!’
**Goha and the Shoes**

p.16: **Who do you think played the best trick? Click on one picture and explain your choice.**
The options given are Goha and his ‘guests’. Answers will be subjective but should be justified and could refer to the following facts about the tricks.

- The ‘guests’ know that Goha is generous and forgetful, and that his wife Rama is an excellent cook. They decide to play a trick on Goha by pretending that he invited them to dinner.
- The trick works: Goha invites them in, assuming he’s forgotten about the invitation, despite having no food in the house.
  - However, Rama suspects the trick. She suggests that Goha play a trick of his own.
  - Goha buys food for his guests by first selling their shoes. When the shoes are missed, he says, ‘your shoes, my friends, are in your stomachs!’

**The School Quiz**

p.20: **Do you think it is fair that the Red Team won? Click on one of the answers and explain your choice.**
Either answer should be acceptable as the answer asks for an opinion, but responses should be justified and could refer to the following facts.

- The Blue Team has consistently answered questions correctly until the final round, which is a double-point round.
- The Blue Team has also bragged about how clever they are, and not been kind to the Red Team.
- The Red Team has consistently answered questions incorrectly until the final round, although sometimes this has been because of confusion (between, for example, ‘flower’ and ‘flour’).
- In the final round, the correct answers to all of the Red Team’s questions is ‘pass’. They don’t know any answers – but, by saying ‘pass’ to indicate this, they win the quiz.

**Laugh Out Loud!**

p.16: **Which of these did you like the most? Click on the joke or riddle, and then write a different joke in the box.**
The two options given are:

- What do you get if you cross a tiger with a kangaroo? A stripy jumper!
- What is the biggest ant? An elephant.

The selection will be purely subjective, and any genuine joke should be accepted.
Lex Luthor Gets a Job

p.15: Do you think Lex Luthor will come back? Click on an answer and write why.

Either answer should be acceptable as the answer asks for an opinion, but responses should be justified and could refer to the following facts.

- Lex Luthor, an enemy of Superman, gets a job as a reporter at the Daily Planet in order to read its top-secret files on the superhero.
- However, he is kept too busy with daily tasks to get to the files, being told to make coffee and to take photos.
  - Finally, he is pushed out of the news helicopter to deliver a coffee via parachute, and quits.
  - Tangled up in his parachute, he is actually saved by Superman.
  - Angrily, he storms away – shouting, ‘I’ll get even with you, Superman!’
  - Superman says, ‘I think we’ve seen the last of Lex Luthor for a while’ – but Lex thinks, ‘Don’t be so sure, Superman!’
Gold A Book Band

The Fang Family: Sports Day Snack Attack

p.32: What do you think is most scary about Small Fang? Click on a picture and write why.
Any answer should be acceptable, as the question asks for an opinion. It needn’t refer directly to the text, but must be justified appropriately and could mention the following details about each given option.

- Small Fang’s bat wings:
  - He uses them to fly to the front of a queue in the playground, and to fly over the pole in a high jump.

- Small Fang’s claws:
  - He uses them to scare children into dropping their eggs during an egg-and-spoon race.

- Small Fang’s red eyes:
  - He uses them to scare children into falling over during a sack race.

- Small Fang’s love of blood:
  - He almost feeds on one of his friends when the friend cuts his leg.
  - All of his classmates, and his teacher, run away after this.

Pete’s Peculiar Pet Shop: The Very Smelly Dragon

p.12: Help Pete make a poster to sell the dragon. Choose a picture then write the words for your poster.
The image options given are:
- the just-hatched dragon, looking up with big, sad eyes,
- the dragon curled up and asleep,
- the dragon sitting up, wearing a scarf and looking up with his big, sad eyes.

Answers will be entirely subjective, should try to make the dragon seem appealing to a prospective owner and could be written in a style appropriate for descriptions on an advert rather than full sentences.

We know the following facts about the dragon.
- Pete’s own posters said ‘Dragon for sale – only five gold coins’, ‘only four gold coins’ and then ‘only three gold coins’.
- The dragon has recently been washed.
- It does loud, smelly burps.
- It is small.
If you were the dragon, who would you like your owner to be? Click on a picture and write why.

Any answer should be acceptable, as the question asks for an opinion. It should consider the dragon’s point of view, must be justified appropriately and could mention the following details about each given option.

- **Pete:**
  - He owns a pet shop.
  - He loves animals.
  - He felt sorry for the dragon.
  - He gave the dragon a fluffy blanket to sleep on.

- **Mopsy:**
  - She is Pete’s helper.
  - She gave the dragon a bath.
  - The dragon ‘gave her a friendly lick’.
  - She didn’t seem to like the dragon’s smelly burps.

- **Chloe:**
  - She wanted to buy the dragon but had only two plastic pennies.
  - She wanted a pet that could do magic tricks.

- **Lady Overtop:**
  - She says, ‘I’d be the envy of all my friends if I had a dragon.’
  - She didn’t like the dragon’s smelly burps.

- **The wizard:**
  - He says the dragon’s ‘a bit on the small side’.
  - He says, ‘I need bits of dragon to carry out some spells’.

- **The witch:**
  - She has poor hearing and eyesight, and no sense of smell.
  - She can’t go out much, so wanted a fluffy cat to keep her company.
  - Pete liked her.
  - Pete told her the dragon, in its fluffy blanket, was an unusual and very smelly cat.
  - She winked at Pete when she agreed it was an unusual cat.
  - She took the dragon home and stroked it as it sat in her lap.
Tales of Taliesin: The Powerful Potion

p.24: Do you think Ceridwen should have set Taliesin adrift? Click on an answer and write why.

Either answer should be acceptable, as the question asks for an opinion. Responses should be justified, though, and may refer to any of the following facts.

- Ceridwen is a witch. She brews a potion that can ‘open your mind to all the mysteries of the world’ and ‘fill your heart with wild magic’.
- One day, while stirring the potion, her helper, Gwion, splashes the potion onto himself and suddenly knows everything. Realising Ceridwen will be furious, he flees. Without his attention, the potion cracks its cauldron and is ruined.
- Hoping to escape, Gwion turns himself into a hare, a fish, a bird and then a grain of wheat.
- However, Ceridwen transforms into animals that can catch him in each form: a vicious hound, an otter, a hawk and a fat hen.
- Finally, Gwion transforms into a human baby and Ceridwen returns to her human form.
- When she holds the baby, she realises she’s unable to harm it.
- She gives the new-born magical child a new name and sets him adrift on the sea.
- The text says that this is how Gwion escaped, and that the magic in him led to many more adventures.

Answers could therefore argue either point. For example:

- Yes, I think Ceridwen should have set Taliesin adrift because otherwise she would have had revenge on him, and his magic will protect him from the sea.
- No, I don’t think Ceridwen should have set Taliesin adrift because it was dangerous, and she could have forgiven him and brought him up herself.

Cloudy with a Chance of Meatballs: Flint the Inventor

p.5: Which of these inventions do you think is the best? Click on one picture and write why.

The options given are a monkey thought-translator, some hair-growing ointment, a flying car and some rat-birds. Any answer should be acceptable, as the question asks for an opinion. No information on the inventions has been given – other than their names, their images and the fact that ‘none of Flint’s inventions really worked properly’.
The Sarah Jane Adventures: Judoon Afternoon

p.23: Who would you most like to meet? Click on a picture, then write a question to ask him or her.
Answers will be subjective, but should show understanding of appropriate questions to ask the chosen character. The options are:

- **Sarah Jane:**
  - She is a woman with a secret job: saving the world from alien invaders.
  - She is helped by her son and his friends, Luke, Clyde and Rani, and her thinking, talking computer, Mr Smith.
  - Mr Smith sees Captain Tybo’s ship approaching, and Sarah Jane sets off to find it.
  - She and her friends help Captain Tybo and stop Androvax escaping.

- **Captain Tybo:**
  - He is a Judoon, ‘a sort of Space police officer’, who is chasing Androvax.
  - He looks like a rhino, and terrifies two Earth police officers.
  - He says Sarah Jane and her friends ‘were very helpful – for humans’.

- **Androvax:**
  - He is a ‘creepy, yellow alien’.
  - He wants to destroy Earth.
  - He tries to flee once he is spotted.

You CAN Try This at Home!

p.31: Which experiment would you most like to try? Click on a picture and write why.
Answers will be subjective, but should be justified and could mention the following details about each experiment.

- **‘Disco Fruit’:**
  - Water, baking soda and white vinegar are combined so that dried fruit looks as though it is dancing in the liquid.

- **‘The Rubbery Egg’:**
  - An eggshell is made soft and rubbery when an egg is left in vinegar for three days.

- **‘The Ice Lifter’:**
  - Salt is used to freeze thread to the top of an ice cube quickly, so the ice cube can be lifted up.

- **‘The Noisy Fork’:**
  - Sound is conducted through string and into your ears to make the sound of a fork hitting and chair sound like bells.
‘The Magic Balloon’:
  - Baking soda and white vinegar are mixed in a bottle, allowing the bottle to inflate a balloon.

‘Potato or apple?’:
  - Thin pieces of apple and potato become indistinguishable in a taste test if you hold your nose.

**Fossils**

p.31: Which fossil did you think was the most interesting? Click on a picture and write why.

The options given are fossils of a tree, a frozen mammoth, a T-rex, a spider in amber, an ammonite, dinosaur poo and dinosaur footprints. Any answer should be acceptable, as the question asks for an opinion. It needn’t refer directly to the text, but must be justified appropriately. For example:

- I think the dinosaur footprints fossil is most interesting because it gave me an idea about the size of dinosaurs compared to people.
- I think the amber fossil is most interesting because I liked learning about how the tree gum trapped the spider.
- I think the T-rex fossil is most interesting because I didn’t know that hip bones could show how an animal walked.

**The Truth About Fish and Chips**

p.9: Would you eat fish and chips wrapped in old newspaper? Click on an answer and write why.

The only information given about this issue in the text is: ‘Fish and chips always used to be served wrapped in old newspapers. In some countries, this is now banned because people think it is unhealthy.’ Either answer should be acceptable, as the question asks for an opinion. It needn’t refer to the text at all, but should be justified. For example:

- No, I would not eat fish and chips wrapped in old newspaper because the food would get ink on it.
- Yes, I would eat fish and chips wrapped in old newspaper because it is traditional and it would be fun to read the stories while eating!
Gold B Book Band

The Fang Family: Blood Buns and Scarecrows

p.32: Which part of the story do you think is funniest? Click on a picture and write why.
Answers will be subjective, but should be justified and could mention the following details about each given option.

- Grandpa Fang’s shopping list:
  - The shopping list says:
    - ‘Blood buns
    - More blood buns
    - Extra blood buns – in case of visitors!’
  - Small Fang points out, ‘They’re not blood buns. They’re jam doughnuts!’

- Grandpa Fang and Small Fang, now transformed into bats, colliding with a tree:
  - Small Fang has to scoop Grandpa off the tree, three car windscreens and two buses.
  - This is because of ‘Grandpa’s poor eyesight’.

- Grandpa Fang choking:
  - After buying 25 jam doughnuts, ‘Grandpa was so excited that he shoved two into his mouth at once.’
  - After Small Fang pats him hard on the back, the doughnuts fly out and land ‘with a splat on the baker’s glasses.’
  - Grandpa then realises he has lost his fangs.

- Grandpa Fang and Small Fang frightening away a rude lady:
  - The lady pushes in front of Grandpa Fang in the queue, so he transforms into a bat and flies back in front of her before returning to his usual form.
  - Small Fang jokes, ‘I don’t think she’s a member of your fang club, Grandpa!’

- Grandpa Fang offering ‘blood buns’ to people:
  - On the way home, Grandpa Fang and Small Fang scare people intentionally by jumping out and chasing them.
  - They then apologise and offer their victims doughnuts, but ‘the sight of Grandpa, with jam gushing down his hands, just made them run faster.’

- Farmer Pickles complaining about damage to his scarecrow:
  - Grandpa confesses, ‘He just looked so delicious. And I was hungry on our way to the supermarket!’
Farmer Pickles returns Grandpa’s fangs, which he’d left in the scarecrow rather than losing at the supermarket as they’d thought.

Grandpa then asks Farmer Pickles, ‘Now ... do you fancy staying for a bite?’

The Pirate and the Potter Family: Sick as a Parrot

p.24: **Which chapter of the book did you enjoy most?** Click on your answer and write why.

Answers will be subjective, but should be justified and should refer to details in the chosen chapter. For example:

- I like Chapter 1 because I enjoyed the surprise when the pirate appeared.
- I like Chapter 2 because I enjoyed getting to know Captain Kev.
- I like Chapter 3 because Captain Kev’s things were interesting when he unpacked his trunk.
- I like Chapter 4 because I was glad that the parrot got better.
- I like Chapter 5 because it was funny that the Potters chose to be pirates.

Cloudy with a Chance of Meatballs: Weird Weather

p.5: **Would you like to eat ‘a pizza, stuffed inside a turkey, the whole thing deep-fried and dipped in chocolate’?** Click on an answer and write why.

This item of food was requested from Flint’s food machine by the Mayor, who seems to have been ‘enjoying all the free food just a little too much’. Either answer should be acceptable, as the question asks for an opinion. It needn’t refer to the text at all, but should be justified. For example:

- No, I would not like to eat this because I like pizza but not turkey, and covering pizza in chocolate would taste weird.
- Yes, I would like to eat this because I love all those foods and eating them at once would be amazing!

The Sarah Jane Adventures: Blathereen Dream

p.24: **What do you think is most scary in the story?** Click on a picture and write why.

Answers will be subjective, but should be justified and could mention the following details about each given option.
The Slitheen whom Sarah Jane was following:
- He ‘wanted to turn Earth into a giant diamond so he could sell it and become very rich’.

The two Blathereens who ‘appeared out of thin air’:
- They arrested the Slitheen, but Sarah Jane had never heard of them and said she felt ‘uneasy’.
- They gave her some Rakweed as a thank-you gift.

The Rackweed plants:
- They make ‘clouds of tiny, poisonous seeds’ that make people very ill and create many new Rackweed plants instantly.
- They and their seeds can be destroyed using loud noise.

**Animals to the Rescue**

p.30: **Which animal do you think is most helpful? Click on a picture and write why.**

Answers will be subjective, but should be justified and could mention the following details about each given option.
- Pigeons can carry messages even during war, and can always find their way home.
- Dogs can sniff for missing or trapped people, bombs, guns or food, as they have noses 50 times more sensitive than ours. They can also help people with disabilities to do everyday things like close doors, pick things up or cross roads.
- Rats can sniff out landmines without blowing them up.
- Dolphins can find missing Navy divers, things lost underwater and underwater bombs, using sonar.

**Going into Space**

p.27: **What do you think would be most difficult about living and working in space? Click on a picture and write why.**

Answers will be subjective, but should be justified and could mention the following details about each given option.
- Being far from home:
  - Astronauts can be away for weeks or months.
  - There are computers, so they can sometimes get in touch with people at home.
  - Astronauts sometimes forget what it’s like to live with gravity.
- Eating:
  - Most food is cooked on Earth and frozen so astronauts can reheat it.
  - There is very little gravity so food and water float around.
  - Even the smallest crumbs must be caught or they could damage the equipment.
• Washing without water:
  o Water would just float away.
  o Astronauts use wet cloths and wipes instead.
• Doing space walks:
  o There is very little gravity so people float around. They have to be tied to the ship when they leave it.
  o Astronauts have to wear special space suits to protect them.
  o Without the suits, they would not be able to breathe.
  o They have to wear big nappies so they can go to the toilet.
• Sleeping
  o Astronauts have to be tied into sleeping bags and special beds to stop them floating away while they sleep.
  o The sun rises and sets every 90 minutes.
Gold All Levels

*In Your Dreams*  *Title only available to subscribers of Pro Independent and Ultimate packages*

p.31: **Which type of dream did you like learning about? Select one answer and explain what you found interesting.**
The options given are nightmares, daydreams, lucid dreams, ‘waking up’ dreams and normal dreams. Answers will be subjective, but should show accuracy and an interest in at least one type of dream. The thing the reader found most interesting should then be explained in the reader’s own words, and could be reported in a way that incorporates personal response. For example:

- The thing I found most interesting about lucid dreaming was that some people can control what is happening in a dream.
- The thing I found most interesting about nightmares was the book saying that talking to someone about them may help them go away. I will try this as I have nightmares.

Information given should be consistent with the facts in the text.

The Fish in the Tree

p.15: **Do you think it’s funny that Bill tricked Jill? Click on an answer and explain your choice.**
Either answer should be acceptable, as the question asks for an opinion. Responses should be justified, though, and may refer to any of the following facts.

- Jill can’t keep a secret, and told the whole village about Bill’s smelly feet.
- Bill finds a box of gold coins, but doesn’t want to tell Jill because everyone will find out.
- So the villagers will stop believing Jill, Bill sets her up to catch a fish in a tree and a cheese in the pond.
- As a result, the villagers think she ‘can’t be very well’ and that her story is ‘ridiculous’.

Answers could therefore argue either point. For example:

- I think it’s funny because Bill has a good reason and he’s getting Jill back for telling people about his feet.
- I don’t think it’s funny because none of Jill’s friends will ever believe her again.
**The Noises Next Door**

p.6: **Do you think it is true that money can buy anything? Click on an answer and explain your choice.**

Either answer should be acceptable, as the question asks for an opinion, but responses should be justified. They needn’t refer to the text at all, but the context for this remark is as follows.  
- Han Kang was very poor until his rich uncle died.  
- He buys new clothing and furniture, but realises that his house is too small to accommodate it.  
- Han Kang solves the problem by buying a bigger house – this is when he says, ‘Money can buy anything!’  
- The illustration, however, shows that a loud noise is now coming from next door, suggesting that Han Kang will soon encounter a new problem.

**Snow White – The Hex Factor**

p.24: **Which of these dwarves do you think is the funniest? Click on one picture and explain your choice.**

Answers will be subjective, but should be justified and could mention the following details about each character presented as an option.

- **Grouchy:**
  - He is very grumpy, but really wants to hear Snow White singing on TV.
  - He complains about the long pause after the presenter says, ‘And the winner is ...’.
  - He complains about the nut shells and bird poo that littered the house when Snow White used to sing to the animals and birds.
  - He maintains they’re better off without the fame that Snow White will find after she wins.
  - He says ‘Humph!’ a lot.
- **Dozy:**
  - He is usually asleep.
  - He is always very confused when woken up.
  - He says he likes a quiet life.
- **Soppy:**
  - He is always emotional and affectionate.
  - He is usually cheerful, but starts crying easily.
  - He enthusiastically suggests a new lost girl (likely to be Goldilocks) can stay with him and the other dwarves, despite the others’ objections.
**Tasty Treats**

p.13: Which of these stories did you like best? Click on a picture and write why.
Answers will be subjective, but should be justified and could mention the following details about each story presented as an option.

- **Vern and Lettuce Part 1:**
  - A family of polar bears moves to the city because their ice home melted.
  - They become friends with Lettuce’s family of rabbits.
  - The young rabbits are surprised when they are served frozen ‘Inuit bars’ as snacks.

- **Vern and Lettuce Part 2:**
  - Lettuce and Vern (a sheep) are invited to the polar bears’ fancy-dress house-cooling party.
  - They decide to go as each other, and create costumes.
  - When dressed up, they say, ‘I’m having a bad hare day!’ and ‘I look so baa-aa-ad!’

- **Super Animal Adventure Squad:**
  - Cakes and pastries start ‘escaping’ from bakeries all over the country.
  - Agent Cat of the Super Animal Adventure Squad is called, and commands his agents (a frog and a pelican) to start looking – although they are most interested in eating the cakes.
  - From their hot air balloon, they see that ants are stealing the cakes, and follow them to an old observatory.
  - They crash in on mad scientist Dr Weird, who is using his ant-control helmet. He plans to replace the cakes with his own, made from ‘real broccoli’.
  - The Squad crushes the helmet and saves the day.
The Purple Superman

p.14: **Who do you think will win the race? Click on an answer and write why.**

The options given are Superman and Purple Superman. Answers will be subjective, but should be justified and could mention the following details about the story.

- A small, mysterious purple meteorite has fallen to Earth and has been kept by a man named Otis. It has turned him purple and given him the ability to drain strength and energy from people he touches.
  - He has bumped into Clark Kent and gained his superpowers, causing Clark to become so sleepy he’s unable to stay awake without coffee.
- Superman confronts Otis, who drains more of Superman’s power.
- After more coffee, Superman recovers and challenges Otis to a race. He arrives for the race wearing oven gloves.
White A Book Band

The Fang Family: Fright at the Fair

p.32: What do you think the Fang family are going to bite? Click on a picture and write why.
The options given are the pizza or the pizza boy. Answers will be subjective, but should be justified and could mention the following evidence from the story.

- We know that the family hates garlic and loves to suck blood from people’s necks.
- Grandpa attempts to bite a scarecrow, and Father Fang greets someone, ‘Very pleased to eat ... I mean meet you’.
- Mother Fang comments that people at the fair ‘look just so delicious’.
- However, the family does appear to be planning to eat regular food at the fair (such as burgers or pizza) until learning it includes garlic.
- Father Fang ensures the pizza they have now ordered will not contain garlic, suggesting they do intend to eat it.
- In the picture, the family looks menacing while the pizza boy is afraid; however, they do appear to be reaching for the pizza.

The Pirate and the Potter Family: All at Sea

p.21: Who do you think is the best pirate? Click on a picture and write why.
Any answer should be acceptable, as the question asks for an opinion, but it must be justified appropriately and could mention the following details about each given option.

- Captain Kev:
  - He is ‘a happy, friendly pirate. He wasn’t fierce at all.’
  - He became friends with the Potters and turned them ‘more and more piratical’.
- Bad Boris:
  - He wants to steal a comfy chair and a teddy bear.
  - He says he’ll fight Captain Kev and the Potters for their ship.
  - He is close to tears when he realises he’s been beaten, and says he hates life on his ship, with ‘no cosy comforts’, ‘hearty meals’ or ‘jolly sing-songs’.
- **Stinky O’Skunk:**
  - He wants to steal pieces of eight and nice fruit cake.
  - He repels enemies by being very smelly, but Baby Potter’s nappy smells worse than him.

- **Red-Faced Ron:**
  - He wants to steal charts and maps.
  - He is the best fighter and believes he is red in the face from anger.
  - However, Gran discovers he’s just sunburned and gives him sun cream, so he becomes calm and happy.

- **Quick Slick Old Nick:**
  - He wants to steal hammocks for naps.
  - He says he’s the fastest sword-fighter on the Seven Seas, but is outwitted in a sword fight by Billy and Lilly (the Potter children).

---

**The Sarah Jane Adventures: Painting Peril**

p.24: **Which gadget would you most like to have? Click on a picture and write why.**

Answers will be subjective, but should be justified and show understanding of what each object does. The options are:

- **Sonic lipstick:**
  - This ‘can open locked doors, make machines work and do lot of other things too’.
  - In this book, it is used as a weapon and to reverse the effects of alien power.

- **Amazing computer:**
  - Sarah Jane’s computer is called Mr Smith, and can talk.
  - He tells her everything she needs to know, including (in this book) that the Mona Lisa is missing and that aliens are involved.

- **Alien box:**
  - This is ‘full of alien energy’.
  - It brings to life paintings painted with alien paint – in this book, the Mona Lisa – giving them alien powers.

---

**Stunt Bunny: Superpet!**

p.27: **Who would you vote for in the Superpets competition? Click on a picture and write why.**

The options are Harriet Houdini, the donkey and the chimpanzee. Any answer should be acceptable, as the question asks for an opinion – although very little information is given about any option but Harriet. Responses must be justified appropriately and could mention the following details from the text.
After Harriet proves herself an expert at escaping and dare-devil stunts, her owners enter her into a competition on an animal talent show called Superpets.

- The donkey performs by disco dancing.
- The chimpanzee performs by hula-hooping.
- Harriet performs by doing a back-flip and ringing a bell with her back legs.

**The Adventures of Sinbad the Sailor: Monkeys and Monsters**

p.32: Which of the islands would you least like to be stuck on? Click on a picture and explain why.

Either answer should be acceptable as the question asks for an opinion, but responses should be justified and could mention the following details about each option.

- **Being stuck with the monkeys and the ogre:**
  - The island, which Sinbad calls ‘the evil island of Zub’, appears to be a beautiful desert island, with palm trees, golden sand and tall cliffs.
  - However, a gang of monkeys inhabits it. They have ‘small, cruel eyes and twisted faces, and each one carried a razor-sharp dagger in its mouth.’
  - The monkeys board Sinbad’s ship and throw the sailors into the sea.
  - There is a towering castle on the island. Its gates are open, but inside lives a huge ogre who cooks and eats humans.
  - The ogre throws rocks at the sailors’ escaping raft, drowning all but Sinbad.

- **Being stuck with the Old Man of the Sea:**
  - The next island is ‘covered in a lush forest, and all the trees were laden with delicious fruit’ that Sinbad eats.
  - An old man lives there. He asks Sinbad to help him across a river and then refuses to leave the sailor’s shoulders, kicking, punching and scratching him.
  - The old man cackles, ‘You’ve just become my slave!’
  - Sinbad eventually frees himself by feeding the old man so much that he can no longer hold on, and then makes his escape on a passing ship.
**Wizards, Spiders and Castles**

p.11: **Which part of the Jelly Jungle would you most like to visit?**

**Click on one place and explain what you would do there.**

The options given are ‘spaghetti nests’, ‘ice-cream caves’ and ‘swamp of custard’.

Answers will be entirely subjective, but should give at least one (perhaps fantastical) suggestion of something to do in the chosen location.

They could refer to the following facts about each option.

- Wild beasts and snakes make their dens in the ice-cream caves and sleep on chocolate cakes.
- The sausage-roll bird lays its eggs and preens its syrup wings in the spaghetti nests.
- The crocodile dozes in the swamp of custard with a cherry on his nose.

**Caring for Exotic Animals**

p.29: **What question would you like to ask an exotic animal carer?**

**Click on a person and write a question.**

Answers will be subjective, but should show understanding of appropriate questions to ask the chosen person.

The options are:

- **Snake handler:**
  - They usually work at zoos, caring for many kinds of snakes such as cobras, pythons and tree snakes.
  - King cobras are very venomous. They like to hide under leaves and inside hollow logs.
  - Pythons are some of the largest snakes in the world – they squeeze their prey to death. They like long grass, rocks and hollow logs.
  - African tree snakes are small and shy. They like hiding inside hollow logs and come out to eat lizards and frogs at night.
  - The snake handler has to heat snake cages (as snakes are cold blooded), clean out the snake cages (carefully moving the snakes first) and feed the snakes with mice, rats, chicks and other reptiles.
  - The job may sound dangerous but they know all about snakes and other reptiles.

- **Orang-utan carer:**
  - The featured carers work at a wildlife park, looking after orphaned baby orang-utans.
  - ‘Orang-utan’ means ‘man of the forest’ in the Malay language.
  - Orang-utans often lose their families and homes when people cut down rainforests.
The babies cry for milk day and night, and the carers have to feed them at any hour of the day or night.
When they are older the orang-utans are taught to pick fruit, climb trees and make leaf nests at ‘forest school’.
Eventually, the carers release them back to the forest, which can be sad.

- Whale rescuer:
  - Whale rescuers work in a group. They get reports of whales that need help, and then find and look after sick and injured whales.
  - They need to be able to dive and use motor boats.
  - If a whale is caught in a fishing net, the rescuers put on scuba gear and cut the whale free.
  - If a whale gets stuck on a beach, the rescuers pour water on it to make sure it stays wet and cold enough. They then use special equipment to lift the whale back into the sea.
  - Whales breathe air through their blowholes, and can hold their breath for about twenty minutes.

**Birds of Prey**

p.23: **Which bird of prey do you think is the best hunter? Click on a picture and write why.**
Any answer should be acceptable as the question asks for an opinion, but responses should be justified and could mention the following details about each option.

- The falcon:
  - Falcons can fly at high speed and change direction quickly.
  - They hunt smaller birds, reptiles and small land animals.
  - They live around 17 years in the wild.
  - To hunt, they can catch prey in the air, hitting it at high speed to kill it.
  - The Peregrine Falcon is the fastest animal on Earth, reaching speeds of over 400km/h – as fast as the fastest train on Earth.

- The osprey:
  - Ospreys are found all over the world, near lakes, rivers and seas.
  - They hunt fish.
  - They live around 30 years in the wild.
  - To hunt, they fly slowly over water and, when they see fish, hover over it before diving feet first to grab it.
  - Their feet have rough pads to help them hold onto the fish.
  - They can close their nostrils and dive up to a metre underwater.

- The owl:
  - Owls are nocturnal, and are found all over the world.
  - They hunt small animals, insects, other birds and fish.
  - They live around 60 years in the wild.
  - They do most of their hunting at night.
Most owls swallow their prey whole and then spit out any fur, feathers and bones.
The Snowy Owl lives in the Arctic, and is white to blend in with the snow. It can hunt in the day or night as it doesn’t get dark during Arctic summers.

The vulture:
- Vultures are scavengers. They do rarely kill their own prey.
- They hunt dead or dying animals, some as large as cattle.
- Most of them live around 30 years in the wild, although Andean Condors can live to 60.
- They use their long wings to soar long distances for food. The Andean Condor’s wings are over 3 metres wide.
- They have bald heads so that they can stay clean when eating dead animals.

Monkeys

If you wanted to find more information about real monkeys, which of these books would you choose to read? Click on one answer and write why.
The options given are:
- Amazing Monkey Facts
- Mia Monkey Goes to School
- How to Make a Monkey

This question is intended to test children’s understanding of the conventions of non-fiction texts. Children should be able to infer that the title Mia Monkey Goes to School suggests a story about a fictional monkey called Mia (as real monkeys do not go to school), and that the title How to Make a Monkey suggests an instruction text about a craft project to make a toy or model monkey (as a reader could not make a real monkey).

The answer ‘Amazing Monkey Facts’ should therefore be chosen and justified. For example:
- I would read Amazing Monkey Facts because it sounds like an information text about real monkeys.
- I would read Amazing Monkey Facts because it would contain facts that could give me the information I wanted.
How Animals Smell, Taste and Touch

p.29: **Which animal sense would you like to know more about? Click on one picture and write what you would like to find out.**

The options given are smell, taste and touch. Answers will be subjective, but should show understanding of appropriate questions to ask about the chosen sense and how it is used by animals. For example:

- Do things smell the same to a moth using its antennae as they smell to us?
- Can fish that taste with their fins be poisoned without eating something?
- What would happen to a cat that had no whiskers?
p.23: **Make a birthday card for Kev. Click on a picture and then write a pirate message below.**

The image options given are:
- a birthday cake
- a balloon with a skull and crossbones design
- a gift wrapped in skull-design paper.

Answers will be entirely subjective but should be written in a style appropriate for both birthday cards and pirates. We know the following facts about Captain Kev.
- He is a happy, friendly pirate who became friends with the Potter family and turned them ‘more and more piratical’.
- He couldn’t count as he had never been to school, so joins Lilly and Billy there.
- He works hard and makes friends with everyone.
- When is it his birthday, they throw him a party.

Kev also teaches the following pirate language, which could be included in the card’s message.
- hello = ahoy!
- yes = aye
- yes, please = aye aye
- very = mighty
- scared = afeard
- I am feeling very nervous! = I be mighty afeard!
- Oh! = Arrrrrrrrrrrr!
- That’s terrible! = Arrrrrrrrrrrr!
- That’s wonderful! = Arrrrrrrrrrrr!
- What a good idea! = Ooo-aarrrrrrrrrrrr!

p.24: **Who do you think has changed the most at the end of the book? Click on a picture and write why.**

Any answer should be acceptable, as the question asks for an opinion, but it must be justified appropriately and could mention the following details about each given option.

- **Captain Kev:**
  - At the beginning of the book, he can’t count and is ashamed of it.
  - At the end, he can count and is proud of himself.
- **Billy and Lilly:**
  - At the beginning of the book, they don’t want to go back to school instead of sailing at sea. They are afraid of the Carter Crew, the school bullies.
  - At the end, they are pleased to be at school with Kev. They are no longer bullied by the Carter crew.
• The Carter crew:
  o At the beginning of the book, they are bullies and are mean to Billy and Lilly.
  o Captain Kev plays a trick on them and then inspires them to give up bullying.

The Sarah Jane Adventures: The Haunted House

p.9: What do you think the old man is? Click on your answer and write why.
Sarah Jane, her son Luke, and his friends Clyde and Rani go to an old house to investigate some strange happenings. They all see an old man ‘in old-fashioned clothes’ who disappears when Sarah Jane speaks.
The options given are that the old man is the house owner, a reporter, a robber, a scientist, a ghost or an alien.
Answers will be subjective, but should be justified and draw on (some of) the following pieces of evidence from the text.
  • Three hundred years ago, an old man lived in the house and hid himself away in a secret room, trying and failing to turn cheap metal into gold.
  • A few years later, the strange happenings began.
  • People say the house is haunted by the ghost of the old man.
  • Sarah Jane and Luke both say that ghosts don’t exist. Clyde isn’t sure.
  • When they arrive at the house, they meet a scientist who is ‘trying to prove that ghosts exist’.

Meddlers: The Not-So-Merry-Go-Round

p.32: Which Meddler to you like the most? Click on a picture and write why.
Meddlers are secretive little people whose job is to make mischief. Any answer should be acceptable, as the question asks for an opinion. It must be justified appropriately and could mention the following details about each given option.
• Professor Kybosh:
  o He teaches the art of meddling.
  o He likes making clever plans and singing rhymes.
  o He dislikes cheeky children and pets.
• Jinx:
  o She is Professor Kybosh’s assistant.
  o She’s bossy but enthusiastic, and a great meddler.
  o She likes being a star pupil and bossing around her brother, Spike – although they get on well, really.
  o She dislikes getting things wrong.
• Spike:
  o He is Professor Kybosh’s junior assistant.
  o He is enthusiastic and playful, but often careless.
    o He likes his pet, Botch.
    o He dislikes being bossed around by his sister, Jinx – although they get on well, really.
• Botch:
  o He is a robot dog who fetches and carries meddling tools.
  o He likes Spike.
  o He dislikes being left out of things.
  o When Jinx and Spike are in trouble, he appears and helps them.

Stunt Bunny: The Great Getaway

p.27: What would you do next if you were Harriet? Click on one option and explain your answer.
The options are ‘Hide inside the car’, ‘Wait for Susie to rescue me’ and ‘Jump out of the car’.
Any answer should be acceptable, as the question asks for an opinion. It must be justified appropriately and could mention the following details from the story so far.
• Harriet is a dare-devil rabbit who does stunts on the TV show Superpets.
• One day, a magician who’s seen Harriet on TV visits the house and offers to buy her for his act, but the family refuses any price.
• The magician returns and steals her.
• Harriet’s eight-year-old owner, Susie, spots him and is tearful as he makes his escape in a sports car.
• Harriet has chewed through the straps of her basket and the car window is open, but the car is already moving away.
(It is revealed on the next page that Harriet uses her stunt-performing skills to jump out of the car.)
The Adventures of Sinbad the Sailor: The Valley of Diamonds

p.23: **Would you rather stay with the pirates or go with the men? Click on an option and write why.**
Either answer should be acceptable, as the question asks for an opinion – and neither option is appealing. Responses must be justified appropriately and could mention the following details from the story so far.
- Sinbad was marooned on an island and set out to explore.
- He escaped the island carried by a giant bird, and was left in a steep rocky valley where he finds diamonds.
- He shares the jewels with a man who finds him a ship, but the ship is captured by pirates.
- The pirates take Sinbad to a market where he is auctioned to brutish men as a slave.

Black-Tailed Prairie Dogs

p.8: **Which of these features most helped you to understand what a prairie dog town is like? Click on one feature and explain how it helped you.**
The options given are the text, the photographs and the diagrams. Answers will be entirely subjective, but should be justified and explain what information the chosen feature has added. For example:
- The text helped me most because it contained facts about the prairie dog town such as that the prairie dog share the tunnels and nesting chambers in their burrow.
- The photographs helped me most because they showed me how the towns look on the surface so I will know how to spot one.
- The diagrams helped me most because they show what the network of tunnels and chambers in a town looks like under the ground.

p.28: **Would you like to be a prairie dog if you were a wild animal? Click on your answer and explain why or why not.**
Answers will be entirely subjective and needn’t refer directly to the text, but responses should be justified and good answers could refer to any of the facts in the book. For example:
- No, I would not like to be a prairie dog because I would prefer to be a tiger and hunt in the jungle, rather than living underground on plains.
• Yes, I would like to be a prairie dog because they are social animals and live in groups. They help each other with safety and grooming.

Animal Self-Defence

p.29: **Which animal’s method of defence would you choose to have? Click on one animal and explain your answer.**

The options given are a leaf insect, a puffer fish and a bombardier beetle. Any answer should be acceptable, as the question asks for an opinion. It must be justified appropriately and could mention the following details about each given option.

- Leaf insects use camouflage to blend in with their surroundings (dried leaves) and avoid attack.
- Puffer fish have spines and can ‘swallow masses of water into their elastic tummies’ to grow in size, in order to look bigger and more threatening than they are.
- Bombardier beetles can spray boiling hot liquid poison at a predator from special glands in the tips of their abdomens.

Earth’s Amazing Environments

p.30: **What do you think is the most important thing to do, to care for the Earth’s environment? Click on one thing and explain why.**

The options given are to recycle, save water, use less electricity, walk and tell people.

Answers will be entirely subjective and needn’t refer directly to the text, but responses should be justified and good answers could refer to any of the facts in the book. The page on which the activity is situated gives the following summary.

Recycling:
- causes less pollution.
- will slow down global warming.

Saving water:
- because all living things need water to survive.

Using less electricity:
- causes less pollution.
- will slow down global warming.
Walking:
- walking more and driving less means less pollution will be released into the air.
- will slow down global warming.

Talking:
- spread the word about how to protect Earth’s amazing environments.

**Gross Things: From Your Head to Your Toes**

p.4: **What type of book is this? Click on a book and write how you know.**
The options given are ‘Non-fiction’, ‘Fiction’, ‘Poetry’ and ‘Play script’. Despite the fact that the book is written using first-person narration from a guide character and contains illustration, answers should be able to detect that this book is non-fiction. They could mention any of the following features in support of their conclusion.
- The book contains an index and a glossary, and bold glossary words in the text.
- It contains facts ‘about gross things inside and outside our bodies’.
- It is written to address the reader directly (e.g. ‘Before we start, you need to know this’).
- It contains labeled images and photographs.
- It contains fact boxes.

p.30: **What was the grossest thing you read about in this book? Click on a picture and write why.**
The options given are mucus, stomach acid, bacteria and dust. Answers will be entirely subjective and needn’t refer directly to the text, but responses should be justified and good answers could refer to any of the facts in the book. For example:
- I think mucus is gross because runs out of our noses, and we make about four cups of it a day.
- I think stomach acid is gross because it’s so powerful it can eat through metal, it makes us break wind and it smells horrible when we throw up.
- I think bacteria are gross because they make chemicals that rot our teeth, and make sweaty feet and poo smell.
- I think dust is gross because it is mostly dead skin flakes and feeds dust mites.
Our Neighbour’s a Vampire

p.15: **What do you think might happen to William? Select one answer and explain why you have chosen it.**

William has become convinced that his new neighbor is a vampire, and is determined to investigate. He has given his mother a report on his observations, to give to the police if anything happens to him: “I might be attacked by bats, or killed by a vampire,” said William.’

The question asks for an opinion, but responses should be justified using the limited information available to the reader on this topic. The options given are:

- He will lose interest in the man.
- He will be killed by a vampire.
- He will be attacked by bats.
- He will find out who the man is.

The title of the book suggests that William’s ideas are the focus of the story, so it is unlikely that answers suggesting that William will lose interest in the man will be well supported.

William himself suggests that he may be killed by a vampire or attacked by bats, and responses could argue that he is taking a risk by investigating someone he thinks is so dangerous.

The most sensible suggestion is probably that William will find out who the man is, as this is his intention. This answer also shows most awareness of the conventions of mystery stories.

Gross Things: About Animals

p.30: **Look back at the title that has been chosen for this book. Do you agree that all the animal facts are gross? Select one answer and explain your opinion.**

Answers will be entirely subjective, but should show an appreciation of the facts in the book and an understanding of the word ‘gross’ as ‘revolting, disgusting’ (as defined in the glossary). For example:

- I do think the facts are gross, because they are all about disgusting things like sick, slime, poo and blood.
- I do not think the facts are gross, because I find them very interesting and I enjoyed learning about how other creatures live.
I Wonder Why?

p.27: Which animal fact did you find most interesting? Select an animal and explain your favourite fact.

Each animal featured in the book is an option given. Answers will be subjective, but should show accuracy and an interest in at least one fact from the text. The fact should then be explained in the reader’s own words, and could be reported in a way that incorporates personal response. For example:

- The most interesting fact about elephants was that they flap their ears to cool down their blood.
- The most interesting fact about meerkats was that they all have different jobs to do, just like people.
- The most interesting fact about dogs was the information about what dogs’ tails mean because I will use to understand my dog better.

The Escape

p.24: Which character do you like best? Click on one picture and explain your choice.

Any answer should be acceptable as the question asks for an opinion, but responses should be justified and could mention the following details about each given option. The options are:

- Princess:
  o The princess is described as ‘beautiful, clever and running away’.
  o She was imprisoned by a wicked wizard and is then rescued by the prince.
    o She stole the wizard’s wand and learned his tricks before she makes her escape.
    o As she and the prince are chased by the wizard, she performs ingenious spells to disguise them and throw the wizard off their track.
    o Once out of danger, she thanks the prince but has no intention of going home with him.
- Prince:
  o The prince is described as ‘handsome and brave’.
  o He rescues the princess from a wicked wizard, and rides expertly as they are chased.
  o He is astonished and impressed by the princess’s spells.
  o He finds it funny when one spell causes him to lose some hair.
• Midnight:
  o Midnight is the Wizard’s horse.
  o He makes funny asides and quips about his wicked owner to the audience, complaining that the wizard always calls him ‘silly horse’.
  o He is pleased to become the prince’s new horse once the wizard is defeated.

**The Genie**

p.24: *Would you open the bottle to let the Genie out again? Click on one answer and explain your choice.*

Either answer should be acceptable as the question asks for an opinion, but responses should be justified and could mention the following details from the text.

- On a family trip to the beach, children Adam and Emily find a bottle in the sea. They open it, and a genie flies out.
- The genie offers the family four wishes, which they spend unwisely:
  o Adam wishes for his dog Samson to talk.
  o Samson (with an extra, free wish) wishes for Adam to become a dog too.
  o Mum accidentally turns Samson (rather than Adam) into a boy.
  o Emily wishes for a pony.
  o Torn as to how to solve all their problems, Mum and Dad hesitate – then Adam (still a dog) writes ‘Put the clock back’ in the sand and the wish is granted.
- With everything back to normal, Adam and Emily again find the bottle in the sea. Answers could therefore argue that the wishes could be better spent – the family doesn’t seem to remember the incident, however, so they are unlikely to have learned from their mistakes.

**Wallace and Gromit: The Weatherman**

p.5: *Who do you think is responsible for what is happening? Select one person and explain your answer.*

The options given are Wallace, Gromit and Ron Winterbottom. Any answer should be acceptable as the question asks for an opinion, but it must be justified and should be based on the following plot points.
• After writing a letter complaining about the inaccuracy of TV weatherman Ron Winterbottom, Wallace begins to build a machine to help with weather forecasts.
• The weatherman reads the letter and goes to Wallace’s workshop while he is out.
• When Wallace and Gromit return, they find a violent storm directly over their house.

Responses are therefore most likely to infer that Ron Winterbottom is responsible, as he has had most recent access to the machine, and a grudge against Wallace or perhaps the lack of experience necessary to make a mistake with it. However, other answers should be accepted if fully justified: it could be argued that Wallace’s unfinished invention means he is to blame, or that Gromit’s clear frustration with Wallace, and his good technical ability, have led him to play a trick.

p.15: **Why do you think Wallace says he will stay upstairs? Select one answer and explain your choice.**

The options given are:
• He is being brave.
• He is not being brave.

Either answer should be acceptable as the question asks for an opinion, but it must be justified and should be based on the following plot points.
• It is Christmas Eve. Shaun the Sheep has managed to switch on Wallace’s present-wrapping machine while Wallace and Gromit are asleep.
• The machine has wrapped Shaun into a present and delivered him to a stocking upstairs.
• The noise wakes up Wallace and Gromit, and they believe there is a burglar in the house.
• Wallace sends Gromit downstairs to check, and says he’ll stay upstairs ‘in case they try to steal the beds’.
• Wallace then investigates upstairs with a torch and finds the wrapped Shaun.
• He takes this ‘present’ downstairs to the tree – once Gromit has confirmed there were no burglars.

Responses are therefore most likely to infer that Wallace was not being brave, as:
• the noises came from downstairs,
• his concern about the beds was unconvincing,
• he waits for Gromit’s all-clear before going downstairs himself.

However, they could also argue that Wallace may have heard a noise upstairs too (as Shaun was delivered there), and refer to the fact that Wallace does investigate the bedrooms alone.
Mirror Magic

p.14: **Who is your favourite character? Click on a picture and write why.**

In this story, three children enter a hall of mirrors at a fair and discover that the ‘old guy’ running it is mystically trapping children in his mirrors. Answers will be entirely subjective, but should be justified and could mention the following details about each character.

- **Franky:**
  - Franky Kan-Lee is a fun-loving Asian boy with spiky hair.
  - He initially says the old guy running the hall of mirrors is ‘not that bad’.
  - He is enthusiastic until he discovers the children trapped in mirrors.

- **Ruby:**
  - Ruby Rosado is a sassy Hispanic girl who dresses in goth clothes.
  - She says the old guy ‘looks really creepy’, and doesn’t want to go into the hall.
  - She works out that touching the mirrors traps you in them.
  - She is a good shot with a catapult.
  - She works out how to free the children.

- **Edi:**
  - Edi Sugarman is an overweight Caucasian boy who’s often eating.
  - He is initially enthusiastic about the hall of mirrors.
  - He tries to save Franky when he’s pulled into a mirror, and is almost trapped himself.

- **Old guy:**
  - He is a sinister-looking Caucasian man with a dripping, pointed nose and yellowish eyes.
  - He runs the hall of mirrors.
  - He thinks, ‘Horrible kids! Always touching my lovely clean mirrors with their sticky fingers. Well not this time! Ha ha!’
  - In revenge, he mystically traps kids in his mirrors when they touch them.
**Lime A Book Band**

**Meddlers: Tick, Tock, Unfix the Clock**

p.11: *If you were a Meddler, what meddle would you do in Busyville? Click on an option and write why.*

The people of Busyville are always very busy and rely absolutely on the clock in the town square. The options given are:
- Make the clock chimes go wrong.
- Change the time.
- Stop the clock.

Any answer should be acceptable, as the question asks for an opinion, but it must be justified appropriately.

p.32: *Do you think catching the Bank Busting Bunch was part of the Professor’s plan? Click on an answer and write why.*

The Meddlers are ‘unfixing’ the Busyville clock to speed it up and stop chiming – but the chimes instead ring continuously. The chimes make a gang of robbers’ tunnel crumble, so they have to retreat and run into a police officer investigating the noise. They trip over the Meddlers’ vehicle and are caught.

The Professor implies the capture was intentional: Spike says that the capture was ‘just luck’, but the Professor suggests, ‘maybe it was one of my many cunning plans.’ However, answers should conclude that this is not likely to be true because:
- While the Meddlers are preparing their meddle, the text says, ‘[l]ittle did the Meddlers know that, down in the cellar of the tower, the crooked Bank Busting Bunch were up to no good.’
- The repetitive sounding of the chimes was not part of the Professor’s plan.

**Rocky and the Wolf Cub**

p.32: *Do you think Mum should let Alf stay? Click on your answer and explain why in the space provided.*

Either answer should be acceptable, as the question asks for an opinion. It must be justified appropriately and could mention the following details from the story.
- Rocky is a stone-age boy who, while picking nuts and berries, finds an orphaned wolf cub.
- Although he knows he’ll get into trouble for taking it to the village, he adopts the cub and names it Alf.
Rocky hides Alf until Mum finds him eating their roast rabbit and chases him away. Then, when a large snake threatens Mum and Alf helps Rocky kill it, she allows Alf to stay. Answers could therefore argue either option, using these events and inference. For example:
- Mum should let Alf stay because he will protect them and could help with hunting.
- Mum should not let Alf stay because having a wolf in the village is dangerous and he will need to eat too much.

_Pirate School: The Birthday Battle_

p.9: **Would you rather go to Pirate School or Dick Lurkin’s School for Highway-kids? Click on one picture and explain your choice.**
Either answer should be acceptable, as the question asks for an opinion. It must be justified appropriately and could mention the following details about each option.
- Pirate School is run by ‘a nightmare on legs’, Mrs Patagonia Clatterbottom, and everyone is afraid of her.
- However, Pirate School lessons are ‘exciting’: they include rope-swinging, walking the gangplank, disco dancing and ‘capturing-skills: biffing and baffing and that kind of stuff’.
- Dick Lurkin teaches how to ride horses, say fierce highway-kiddish things, make masks and jump out of the woods to ‘scare the pants off people’.
- The highway-kids have, so far, always won battles against the pirate kids.

_Mae in the Middle: Music Master_

p.3: **Who do you think is the main character in this book? Click on one picture and write why.**
The reader is asked to select an unlabeled picture, so must make reference to a single labeled group image in the book and/or the book’s title page, which also features an image of Mae. Answers should be able to work out from the series title (‘Mae in the Middle’) that Mae is the main character, and should also be able to recognise her image: she is the only brown-haired child, and always wears her hair in bunches.
Which instrument would you most like to learn how to play? Click on a picture and write why you chose it.
The options given are a trumpet, a piano and an electric guitar. Answers will be entirely subjective and needn’t refer to the text, but should be properly justified. The only information about any instrument available in the text is that Mae chooses to learn the trumpet after being impressed by Miles Davis’s ‘So What?’ on the radio. When discussing her own trumpet, Mae’s friend also comments on ‘how good it sounds’. We also learn that practising involves playing the ‘same tunes, over and over’ – although it should be clear this comment is relevant to any instrument.

DreamWorks Dragons: When Lightning Strikes

How do you think Hiccup will feel about going away? Select one answer and explain why you think this.
The options given are ‘sad’, ‘happy’ and ‘excited’. The question asks for an opinion, but answers must be justified appropriately and should be based on the following details from the text so far:
- In order to stop the dragons perching on and ruining his village’s houses, Hiccup designs huge metal perches for them.
- The perches, however, attract lightning to the village, and houses all over it burn to the ground.
- In an effort to soothe the lightning god Thor, Hiccup then makes a huge metal statue of him – but this too is hit by lightning.
- The lightning also chases Hiccup’s own dragon, which is fitted with a metal tailfin because of an injury.
- Angry, the Vikings blame Hiccup’s dragon for Thor’s anger. Hiccup and his father agree that Hiccup should take the dragon away and hide him somewhere safe.

Answers are therefore most likely to conclude that Hiccup must feel sad to be going away, as the decision to leave was forced upon him by angry villagers he had been trying to please. However, it is possible that answers selecting ‘excited’ or even ‘happy’ could be justified, as Hiccup is an intelligent and headstrong young man and his dragon is his ‘best friend’. These answers could suggest that the prospect of an adventure away from hostile tribesmen could be welcome to Hiccup.
Bumblebees, Sweets and a See-Through Stomach

p.24: Whose poems did you most enjoy reading? Click on a poet and explain what you liked about his poems.
The options given are Brian Patten and Tony Mitton. Either answer should be acceptable as the question asks for an opinion, but it must be well justified and refer to work by the poet chosen. Broadly speaking, Brian Patten’s poems are humorous and Tony Mitton’s are impressionistic.

- Brian Patten’s poems are:
  - ‘A Dog’s Life’, about bathing a dog and written from the dog’s perspective;
  - ‘Dear Mum,’, about all the things that go wrong while Mum is out, insisting they were accidents;
  - ‘The Day I Got My Finger Stuck Up My Nose’, about a child who is threatened with having his head chopped off after he gets his finger stuck;
  - ‘Cousin Lesley’s See-Through Stomach’, about suddenly being able to see all the chewed food someone has eaten;
  - ‘The Irreplaceable Mum’, about how a child would still love his/her mum even if she were something unpleasant;
  - ‘Milking a Bumblebee’, about a child’s unsuccessful attempt to get honey;
  - ‘Contrary Me’, about time passing more quickly when you’re older.

- Tony Mitton’s poems are:
  - ‘Doors’, about impressions of the ocean, sky, playground, feelings, evening, night, city and senses;
  - ‘Sweet’, about saving a sweet for a special occasion;
  - ‘Cracker Ring’, about a child imagining the plastic ring in a cracker is magical;
  - ‘Listening in Bed’, about the quiet sounds a child can hear before falling asleep;
  - ‘The Magic Forest’, about a forest that can be entered only ‘through the gates of sleep’;
  - ‘Book’, about the wonder and engagement of reading.

A Volcano Wakes Up

p.9: Who do you think is in the most danger? Click on an answer and explain why.
The text is about Mount St Helens, a volcano in the Cascade Range of mountains in the USA. A reporter has been told it may show signs of erupting for the first time in 123 years, and travels to cover the story. Answers will be subjective, but should be justified and refer to evidence from the text for the option chosen.
For example:

- The reporter and cameraman:
  - They fly close to the volcano in a helicopter, and are very close by when steam gushes out of it.
  - They know the risk, but their job is to get close to it.

- The scientists and volcanologists:
  - They arrive precisely because of the volcano’s increased activity, planning to observe and record the events.
  - We know that ‘the ground shook continually beneath their feet.’
  - They knew the danger, but ‘were prepared to take the risk.’

- The tourists and local residents:
  - The television reporter says, ‘That mountain is a huge tourist attraction. An eruption would put a lot of lives at risk.’
  - Some locals interviewed say they aren’t worried despite feeling small earth tremors, and ignore the scientists’ warnings.
  - Others prepare to leave the area when ash clouds and steam appear, and/or when warned to leave by scientists.
  - Local residents’ pets, homes and neighbourhoods are also at risk.

p.25: **What kind of book is ‘The Volcano Awakes’? Click on an answer and explain how you know.**

The options given are ‘Non-fiction’, ‘Story’ and ‘Fiction’. This is a tricky question because, although the story is told through the eyes of a fictional reporter and the people she meets, the events it describes are all true. Answers must be justified and could refer to the following features.

- Like fiction books, this story contains characters, dialogue, third-person narration, descriptions and illustrations.

- Like non-fiction books, it also contains labelled maps and diagrams, accurate dates and facts, photographs with captions, a glossary and an index.

- The narrative could also be likened to a news story (although not a fairy story), which – if fully justified – is the answer that would show the most understanding: like news stories, it contains elements of fact and fiction because of its personal responses to and descriptions of factual events.
**Poptropica: The Ultimate Guide**

p.31: **What do you think about Poptropica? Click on an answer and write what you think is best about Poptropica.**

This book is a guide to the virtual world of Poptropica, a free real-life online platform where children can create an avatar, travel through different islands, meet other characters and play games to solve mysteries and puzzles.

The options given are:
- It sounds weird.
- It sounds fun.
- It sounds OK.

Whichever is chosen, the typed answer should isolate the ‘best’ thing about Poptropica, in the child’s opinion. Answers will be purely subjective. For example:
- I think the best thing about Poptropica is meeting and talking to the other characters.
- I think the best thing about Poptropica is that you can play games.
- I think the best thing about Poptropica is making an avatar.

**Awesome Animal Adventures**

p.27: **Which giant animal do you think is most interesting? Click on a picture and write why.**

Any answer should be acceptable, as the question asks for an opinion. It must be justified appropriately and could mention the following details about each given option. The options are:
- The Argentinosaurus
  - This was the biggest dinosaur, and the biggest animal ever to walk on Earth.
  - It was 35 m long (longer than four buses parked end to end) and weighed 90 tonnes.
  - It lived about 95 million years ago, and is now extinct.
  - Its bones were found in Argentina.
  - Its diet was plants, and it lived around 50–100 years.
  - It may have cracked its long tail like a whip to scare off predators.
- The giant sloth
  - This was the biggest mammal ever to live on land.
  - It was bigger than an elephant, measuring 6 m long and 3.8 tonnes in weight.
  - It lived during the Ice Age, and is now extinct.
  - It spent a lot of time walking on its back legs like a bear.
  - Its diet was plants.
The blue whale
  o This is the biggest animal that has ever lived – and it is still alive today.
  o It is 33 m long and can weigh up to 180 tonnes.
  o Its tongue alone weighs as much as an elephant.
  o It is a mammal: it lives in the ocean, but breathes air. It can hold its breath for around 30 minutes.
  o It lives around 85 years.
  o Its diet is tiny shrimps (called krill) and other small marine animals, which it sifts from sea water with its baleen plates. It eats up to 3 tonnes of this a day.

p.31: Look at some of the new words you have learned. Click on one word and use it in a sentence about an awesome animal. The choice of word will be subjective but it must be used correctly, in an appropriate context (not, for example, ‘I have learned the word extinct.’).
The options, and their definitions as given in the glossary, are:
  • asteroid: piece of rock or metal in space that moves around the Sun
  • extinct: when a species of animal or plant dies out
  • fossil: remains of plants and animals that lived a long time ago
  • Ice Age: time in the past when much of Earth was covered in ice and snow
  • mammal: warm-blooded animals that produce milk for their young
  • predator: animals that hunt and eat other animals
  • scavenger: an animal that feeds on dead animals
  • tentacles: long, flexible body parts used for gripping

Bugs in our Homes

p.9: Which of these creatures would you least like to find in your kitchen? Click on one picture and explain your choice.
Either answer should be acceptable, as the question asks for an opinion. It needn’t refer directly to the text but must be justified appropriately and could mention the following details about each given option. The options are:
  • Weevils:
    o are found in dry foods like flour and rice.
    o can get into your kitchen in packets bought from shops.
    o play dead if they are caught, and then walk away.
- Mites:
  - are often found in cornflakes, flour, cheese and dried fruit kept in damp places.
  - are tiny – they look like specks of dust.
  - can be found in food such as flour by spreading the flour on paper. The flour will become lumpy if the mites start moving.

p.22: **Would you rather have a spider or a fly in your house? Click on one picture and explain your choice.**
Either answer should be acceptable, as the question asks for an opinion. It needn’t refer directly to the text but must be justified appropriately and could mention the following details about each given option.
- Flies:
  - can spread many diseases.
  - breed in decaying food and manure heaps.
  - can transfer manure to food when they land.
  - can find food by smelling it.
- Spiders:
  - can be found in every room in the house.
  - spin fine, silky webs.
  - are predators and sometimes cannibals, if their living space becomes crowded.
  - can get rid of flies by eating them.
Lime B Book Band

Meddlers: Lickety Kwick and the Mixed-Up Fix

p.17: What would you do next if you were a Meddler? Click on one thing and write why you would do it.
Lickety Kwick is a big-headed racing driver. Professor Kybosh’s plan was to meddle with his car, the Vroom Machine, so it won’t perform properly – and, although Spike thinks they’re being spoilsports, they agree this meddle is ‘one of the best yet’.
However, the Meddlers than hear that Kickety Kwick was planning to give all his winnings away to an animal home. They ask, ‘What had they done?’
The options given are to:
- fix the meddle,
- tell Lickety Kwick about the meddle,
- leave the meddle.
Any answer should be acceptable, as the question asks for an opinion, but it must be justified appropriately.

p.32: Which part of the story did you enjoy the most? Click on a picture and write why.
Answers will be subjective, but should be justified and could mention the following details about each given option.
- Spike fooling around for the TV cameras:
  - Before the meddle begins, Spike has fun with the TV cameras, and leads crowd members to laugh and shout out, ‘We’ve got aliens!’
  - Jinx drags Spike away, and says he could have spoiled all their meddling fun.
  - Professor Kybosh says he was very foolish.
- The Meddlers meddling with the race car:
  - The text says this meddle ‘was one of the best yet. They slid down pipes, they climbed up pulleys, they drilled holes and they filled holes.’
  - This causes Jinx and Spike to believe they have ‘the best job in the whole, wide world’.
- Lickety Kwick overtaking the other cars in the race:
  - Jinx and Spike have given Lickety Kwick instructions for how to fix his car.
  - They are now by his head as he drives past his competitors ‘like a real champion’.
  - The Meddlers are singing a song to motivate him.
Lickety Kwick wondering about the voices he’s heard:
- With the Meddlers’ help, Lickety Kwick has won the race.
- He then notices that his radio switch has been turned off, so his team couldn’t have been the ones talking to him.
- He remembers seeing Spike on the TV cameras and wonders if the voices could have been from tiny creatures like him.

Rocky Runs Away

p.17: **What would you be most scared of in the woods? Click on an answer and explain why.**
Rocky, a stone-age boy, has run away into the woods with his part-tame wolf cub Alf and his friend Stubb. The options given are:
- Hearing the wolves
- Meeting a bear
- Sleeping in a dark cave.

Any answer should be acceptable, as the question asks for an opinion. It needn’t refer directly to the text, but must be justified appropriately and good answers may attempt to take Rocky’s perspective into account. For example:
- I would be most scared of hearing the wolves because there was probably a pack nearby and not all wolves are tame like Alf.
- I would be most scared of meeting a bear because Stubb says that a bear might eat them.
- I would be most scared of sleeping in a dark cave because it would be cold, and dangerous animals could get in.

Pirate School: Nice Dog!

p.5: **What sort of story do you think this will be? Click on one answer and explain why.**
The options given are:
- A true story
- A funny story
- A scary story.

Answers will, to some extent, be subjective – as, for example, some children may find pirates inherently scary – so any well-justified answer should be acceptable. However, most are likely to conclude that this story will be funny rather than scary or true, and could mention any of the following points from the page of story already encountered to support their answer.
• The story is based on the fantastical situation that there is a school for young pirates.
• It contains fantastical characters like Patagonia Clatterbottom, the head teacher of Pirate School: she is compared to ‘a monster with a fiery ginger wig’, ‘big, grabby hands and a wooden leg’, ‘in a mini pirate ship on wheels, complete with cannons’.
• When Patagonia yells, the school secretary dashes ‘out of the bathroom with her dress tucked into her tights’.
• The text is written in an informal, amusing tone of voice, with capitals for emphasis.
• The illustrations are bright, bold and exaggerated.
• The contents page lists chapter titles that suggest funny incidents, such as, ‘A Hop and a Skip and – Oh Dear!’.

**Mae in the Middle: Super Sleuth**

p.13: **Who do you think lost the keys? Click on a picture and write why.**
The options given are Alec, Mum, Roz, Mae and the dog. Very little information has been given at this point in the story so answers will be subjective, but should be justified and could refer to the following facts.
- Mum has lost her keys.
- Roz (the youngest sibling) is very upset about being late to school.
- Alec (the oldest sibling) is being sarcastic.
- He says, ‘our cat hasn’t stolen them, because we don’t have a cat. We have Nipper!’ (Nipper is the dog.)
- Mae (the middle sibling) is reacting calmly and has suggested that they retrace their steps.
- Mum last saw the keys when she drove Mae and Roz home the day before.
- Roz lost the keys last time.

p.32: **If you have lost something, which is the first thing you would do to find it? Click on a bubble and write why.**
The options given are:
- Sit down and have a good think.
- Ask a Super Sleuth to find it.
- Ask everyone I know if they have taken it.
- Retrace my steps.
- Look everywhere I can think of.
Any answer should be acceptable, as the question asks for an opinion. It needn’t refer directly to the text, but must be justified appropriately.
For instance:

- I would retrace my steps because this works for Mae.
- I would look everywhere I can think of because things can be left in surprising places.

**DreamWorks Dragons: No Pack Like Home**

p.5: **Would you like to be able to wear a wing suit? Select one answer and explain your choice.**

Answers will be entirely subjective as the question asks for an opinion. They needn’t refer directly to the text but must be justified appropriately and could mention the following details from the text.

- Hiccup has designed a wing suit so he can fly without his dragon’s assistance, and intends to test it by leaping from a cliff.
- His friends are skeptical about its success.
- Amazingly, the wing suit works well enough to allow Hiccup to swoop and zoom between cliffs, but he is unable to steer it and so eventually drops down into a pool of water.
- Hiccup’s dragon was on hand to rescue him if the suit had failed.

**Work! Work! Work!**

p.32: **Which of the three plays did you enjoy the most? Click on a picture and type your response in the space provided.**

Answers will be subjective, but should be justified and could mention the following details about each given option.

- ‘Pooh!’:
  - The characters of Hercules and Homer are introduced.
  - The king challenges Hercules to clean up a giant ‘pit of poo’ from his 500 bulls’ stables in one day.
    - Homer takes the bet, for 50 bulls, and gives Hercules instructions.
    - When the king returns, the stables are clean because Hercules diverted the river to wash them – but the king says he cheated and won’t honour the bet.
- ‘Sky’s the Limit!’:
  - Hercules meets Atlas, who’s holding up the sky, and asks him to help pick golden apples that Hercules can’t reach.
    - Atlas agrees, if Hercules will hold up the sky while he does it.
    - Atlas then refuses to take the sky back.
Homer agrees that Atlas deserves a break, but asks him to hold the sky for a moment, so Hercules can put a cushion over his shoulders first.

Atlas agrees, and Hercules and Homer run off.

- 'Nice Doggy':
  - Hercules and Homer are in the underworld so Hercules can capture the dog Cerberus.
  - When Hercules finds Cerberus, he realizes the dog had three heads, and can’t find a way to calm or fight them all.
  - Homer produces a large sack and, while Hercules holds the dog’s body, drops the sack over its heads and captures it.

**Watching Comets**

p.19: **Would you have been frightened by Halley’s Comet in 1910? Click on your answer and explain why.**

Either answer should be acceptable and the question asks for an opinion, but it should be justified and attempt to understand the feelings of people in 1910. Responses could mention any of the following facts given in the text.

- Comets had been very frightening to people in the past, but Halley’s Comet was studied by Halley in 1682. He was able to predict that it would return in 1758 (although it actually reappeared in 1759).
- By 1835, ‘ordinary people were able to enjoy watching the comet.’ They ‘had begun to have a greater understanding about what a comet was and their fear was replaced by curiosity.’
- Scientists were prepared for and observed the comet in 1910, and many people enjoyed watching for it.
- However, many people were still afraid that it was a warning of disaster, and bought ‘comet pills’, gas masks and umbrellas to protect themselves from the ‘evil’ that the comet would bring.

**Looking for Invisible Clues**

p.15: **Which tool do you think is most important for an investigator? Click on a tool and write why.**

The options given are a notebook, a special vacuum and a camera. Answers will be subjective as the question asks for an opinion, but should be justified and could refer to any of the following uses of the tools given as options.
Cameras:
- These are used to take photographs and video recordings of crime scenes: ‘close-ups, from a distance, and from every angle’.
- They can also take pictures of trace evidence such as fingerprints.
- They are used to record the crime scene exactly as it is found.

Notebooks
- These are used for noting down details about findings or things that are missing.
- They are also used for drawing diagrams – such as a sketch of a crime scene.
- They, too, are used to record the crime scene exactly as it is found.

Special vacuum cleaners:
- These are used to pick up evidence that is too small to be identified, and that often cannot be seen with the naked eye.

**About Earth**

p.21: **What question would you like to ask Zudu? Click on a picture and write a question about it.**

Zudu is an alien tour guide to Earth. The options given are water, deserts, volcanoes and sunsets. Answers will be subjective, but should show understanding of appropriate questions to ask about the chosen subject – and not repeat the questions already asked (unless the child believes and explains that this question has not been satisfactorily answered).

- The questions already asked about water are:
  - How much water is on Earth?
  - Why is the sea salty?
  - Where do humans find water to drink?

- The questions already asked about deserts are:
  - Where is the driest place on Earth?
  - Where does sand come from?

- The question already asked about sunsets is:
  - Why are sunsets and sunrises red?

- There haven’t yet been any questions on volcanoes as these appear later in the book.
**Star Wars: I Want to Be a Jedi**

p.7: **Would you like to be a Jedi? Click ‘Yes’ or ‘No’ then write why or why not.**

Either answer should be acceptable as the question asks for an opinion, but responses should be justified and could mention the following details given in the book so far about being a Jedi.

- The Jedi are the best fighters in the galaxy but their job is to keep the peace.
- Through training, the Jedi learn to understand, feel and use the Force, an invisible but powerful energy field that exists everywhere.
- They train hard for many years, starting from when they are very young.
- They must leave their friends, family and home to train in the Jedi Temple, which will be their home for the rest of their lives.
- There are many lessons, including how to control feelings.
- There are tests to pass before the young Jedi become Padawan Learners and then Jedi Knights, and finally Jedi Masters.
- Padawans, usually in pairs with Jedi Masters, go on missions using spaceships.

p.29: **Which Jedi tool or skill would you most like to have? Click on a picture and write why.**

Any answer should be acceptable as the question asks for an opinion, but responses should be justified and could mention the following details about each given option. The options are:

- **A lightsaber:**
  - Lightsabers work like swords, but with blades made from lowing energy that is far more powerful than metal.
  - Jedi make their own lightsabers, so every one is different.
  - Jedi must use them only to defend and protect.
- **Mind power:**
  - Jedi can use the Force to move objects without touching them.
  - Wise Jedi can lift very heavy objects as big as spaceships.
  - Mind power can also help in battle, allowing Jedi to move themselves more quickly and pick up dropped weapons with their minds.
- **A comlink:**
  - Comlinks are special communication devices.
  - Jedi use them to send and receive messages.
• A holoprojector:
  o Holoprojectors let a Jedi record a 3D image and then play it back later.
  o They also let Jedi send a moving image of themselves to another person, like a video link.

• A starfighter:
  o When Jedi go on missions, they often fly small spaceships called starfighters.
  o There is just enough space for the Jedi pilot and a small droid.
Lime All Levels

*Tops and Bottoms* *Title only available to subscribers of Pro Independent and Ultimate packages*

p.8: **Would you have shaken hands and sealed the deal, like Seth did? Select one answer and explain your choice.**

Either answer should be acceptable as the question asks for an opinion, but responses should be justified and consider the following details from the text.

- Seth is a farmer who grows barley and turnips. He has a hard life and sometimes his crops don’t grow.
- One day, a nasty goblin called Tim Tot vows to curse Seth’s farm unless Seth agrees to give him half of everything he grows for the next three years.
- Despite his concerns, Seth feels ‘he had no choice’ but to accept the bargain and reluctantly shakes Tim Tot’s hand to seal the deal.
- Seth spends all night worrying about what he has done, and wonders how he can feed his family with only half of his crops.

Responses could therefore argue that freedom from Tim Tot was worth losing the farm and starting afresh somewhere new, or agree that Seth had no option but to save what he could of his farm.

*Title only available to subscribers of Pro Independent and Ultimate packages*

p.31: **After reading these facts, which food will you try to eat more often?**

**Select one answer and explain why you need this food.**

The selection will be purely subjective, but answers must accurately report why the chosen option is needed. Responses may use facts from the text and personal experience. The options and their uses are:

- Bread, rice and pasta:
  - should make up a big part of a balanced meal.
  - contain nutrients that give you energy.
- Cheese and yoghurt:
  - are an important source of protein (needed for the body to grow, heal and stay healthy) and calcium (which helps to grow strong bones and healthy teeth).
- Fruit and vegetables:
  - contain different vitamins that your body needs, such as Vitamin A for good eyesight, B-group vitamins for healthy blood, Vitamin C to help you fight disease, Vitamin E for healthy skin and Vitamin K to help blood clot.
• Fish, meat, eggs and tofu:
  o contain protein, which is needed for the body to grow, heal and stay healthy – and fish also contains Omega 3, which is needed for the brain to work well.

Exploring Caves

p.27: **Would you like to explore caves in real life? Select your answer and explain your choice.**

Either answer should be acceptable as the question asks for an opinion, but responses should be justified and could mention details from the text. For example:

- I would like to explore caves in real life because it would be exciting to see the rock formations, animals and paintings you can find in them.
- I would like to explore caves in real life because The Blue Grotto looks beautiful.
- I would not like to explore caves in real life because I am afraid of the dark and small spaces.
- I would not like to explore caves in real life because I would have to get lots of special equipment in order to stay safe, so it looks too dangerous.

Choose Me!

p.19: **Which of these dogs do you like most? Click on one picture and explain your choice.**

In this play, owners are chosen from a pet shop by dogs, rather than vice versa.

Any answer should be acceptable as the question asks for an opinion, but responses should be justified and could mention the following details about each given option. The options are:

- **Picky Dog:**
  o He comments that the children in the shop are too big, small, hairy, noisy or skinny, and complains about their ears and legs.
  o He decides none will do for him, and leaves the shop.

- **Soft Dog:**
  o She comments that the children are ‘so cute’ and compliments them all.
  o When two children start fighting over who gets to go home with her, though, she decides they’re too rough and leaves the shop.
• Fit dog:
  o He demands a fit owner, and asks if the children can run, jump, swim and throw, as well as if they have won any prizes.
  o He comments that boys are fitter than girls, and that he only wants a boy.
  o He then concludes that the children are a ‘feeble bunch’ and leaves the shop.

**The Smell of the Cakes**

p.24: **Which one of these characters do you like most and why?**
**Click on one picture and explain your choice.**
Any answer should be acceptable as the question asks for an opinion, but responses should be justified and could mention the following details about each given option. The options are:

- **Rose Rumbletum:**
  o Rose is in court because, while she was out shopping for her ill mother, she smelled some just-baked cakes they couldn’t afford to buy.
  o She is afraid of her accuser, Mr Loaf the baker, and ran from him when he waved a ‘great big loaf of bread’ at her.
  o She is accused of robbery but maintains her innocence, saying, ‘I thought that smelling was free.’

- **Judge:**
  o She hears the case sternly but fairly, allowing everyone a turn to speak.
  o She finally asks Rose for all the money she has on her, and takes a bag of coins – which distresses Rose and pleases Mr Loaf.
  o However, she shakes the bag and reveals that Mr Loaf’s payment for the smell of his cakes is, in fact, the sound of the coins – and she hands the coins back to Rose.

- **Clerk:**
  o The Clerk tries and tries to keep control of the court, repeating the judge’s orders and shouting ‘Silence!’ to little avail.
Traffic Jam

p.9: **Would you like to see a robot in the road? Click on one answer and explain your choice.**

A lorry driver, van driver, VIP and group of children in a bus are all getting frustrated because of a long traffic jam. A police officer arrives and is reluctant to tell them the cause, but it eventually emerges there’s a giant robot sitting in the road.

Either answer should be acceptable as the question asks for an opinion. Responses needn’t refer directly to the text, but should be justified.

For example:

- I would not like to see a robot because it sounds dangerous and I would prefer the traffic to be good.
- I would like to see a robot because it would be more interesting and exciting than the usual reasons for traffic jams!

Wallace and Gromit: A Runaway Success

p.6: **Do you think Wallace’s inventions in this story were successful? Select one answer and explain why you think this.**

The question asks for an opinion, but answers must be justified appropriately and should be based on the following details from the text.

- This comic strip focuses on the owner of Bradawl’s Supplies (a hardware shop), who believes that ‘Mr Wallace is a brilliant inventor.’
- We see little of the planning and creation behind Wallace’s inventions, only what he buys for them, a glimpse of the final products and Wallace’s intermediate discussion with Mr Bradawl: Wallace says his first invention was ‘a runaway success’.
- The reader has to infer the success of the inventions based mainly on comprehension of two images:
  - Wallace’s first invention appears to be a steam-powered ’Pigeon Catcher’: it has a bag of corn at the front and two rotating wheels of pond nets. We see it racing down a road, narrowly missing hitting a cat and being chased by Wallace and Gromit, who both looking panicked.
  - Wallace’s second invention appears to be an armchair attached to a huge helium balloon and steered by rotating propellers made from canoe paddles. We see it whizzing low along a street, with Wallace trailing behind it and clinging desperately to the cloth of the armchair. Gromit is calmly coming to his aid using a small jet pack.
Answers are therefore most likely to conclude that Wallace’s inventions are not a success, as Wallace appears to have lost control of both of them. They may also appreciate the wordplay of ‘a runaway success’ as being a reference to the vehicles running away disguised as a report of their success.

**Monstrous Trouble**

p.13: **What do you think the twins will use to stop the monster? Click on a picture and write why.**
A monster is destroying Big City by eating its buildings. The options given are soldiers, a carnivorous plant, a rocket and a doughnut. Answers should be justified and should conclude that the twins will use doughnuts to stop the monster, based on the following evidence.

- Police Officer Lowe says he doesn’t have a plan, but he does have his ‘two daughters, Teresa from the teashop and a mountain of doughnuts!’
- His daughter Jenny says she has a plan, having looked at what the monster is eating: half a promotional giant tyre, half of a ring-shaped football stadium and half of a promotional giant ring-shaped mint.
- They comment that all of the damaged buildings are doughnut-shaped.

p.16: **Which part of the comic do you like best? Click on a picture and write why.**
Answers will be subjective, but should be justified and could mention the following details about each story presented as an option.

- **The Strange Strange World of Weird:**
  - A monster is destroying Big City by eating its buildings.
  - Police Officer Lowe’s daughters realise that the monster is eating doughnut-shaped structures.
  - The police force uses doughnuts and a helicopter to capture the monster.
- **Dinosaurs Around Us:**
  - This is a non-fiction report about dinosaurs’ closest living relatives: chickens, crocodiles and komodo dragons.
  - It gives facts about dinosaurs and their bones as well as the living animals, and provides a glossary.
  - It is illustrated with photographs and CGI images rather than cartoons.
Crab Lane Crew:
- The Crab Lane Crew borrows a metal detector and sets out to become treasure hunters.
- They find nothing exciting, so one member offers to bury things in her garden for them to find.
- The detector’s battery runs down and it gets dark, so they decide to hunt further the next day.
- However, the detector must be used again that night – as all the cutlery for dinner has been buried.

Sausage and Carrots:
- Sausage and Carrot are playing a board game.
- Sausage is fed up because he never wins and wants to be best at something.
- Carrot consoles him by saying he is best at losing badly.
Brown A Book Band

Moya, the Luck Child

p.19: **Which character do you think made the best wish and why?**
Three men live in a forest and look after the King of Ireland’s cattle. They have brought up Moya, whom they found in the forest, and she brought them good luck. One day the King of Ireland wanted Moya to bring *him* luck, and gave each of the three men a wish in exchange for her visit:

- Conary wished for a golden coat like Moya’s blanket, so he could feel her close to him always.
- Brian wished for a silver spear and a golden shield, to defeat any enemy.
- Aidan wished only to hear poets tell of Moya’s deeds, and Moya added to this, for him to stay by her and tell her stories.

Answers will be wholly subjective, but should be well thought out and show awareness of what the wishes were.

p.20: **Do you think that ‘the Luck Child’ is a good name for Moya? Use the book to help you explain your answer.**
Although any well-thought-out answer should be acceptable (and we have little actual proof of the cowherds’ luck), it is probable that answers will conclude ‘the Luck Child’ to be a good name for Moya because:

- Conary said ‘she brings us joy and luck’.
- she was lucky for the King of Ireland: she prevented war.
- it could be said that she herself was lucky to be found and raised by the three men despite having been stolen by the ‘Little People’.

Changing Places

p. 8: **Why were Oska and Spike laughing at what they had done? Refer back to the text to explain your answer.**
Oska and Spike are best friends, but Oska is about to move away. To cheer themselves up, the boys were sorting stamps. They were laughing because:

- as they were sorting stamps into animals and cars, they came to Jaguar stamp and said it fitted into both categories.
- Spike drew a cage with bars around this stamp, visualising the pun.
- the boys were laughing at the pun and also, in part, to hide the fact that they are sad to be separated.
p.21: **Where do you think Itchi has gone? Refer to the text and explain why you think this.**

Itchi is Spike’s dog. Recently, she has become fat and has no energy (the text says ‘mostly she just crept around looking for places to sleep’). Spike’s mum told him, ‘Itchi’ll be all right. She’s not her usual self, though, so you’ll have to keep an eye on her.’ There isn’t any more information in the text, so various ideas should be acceptable. For example:

- Perhaps she is unwell somewhere, and unable to move.
- Itchi may have gone to find Oska – Spike thinks ‘Even Itchi’s sad’ at his leaving.
- Itchi could be pregnant, and having puppies: we know that she has got ‘so fat she could hardly waddle’. This turns out to be what has happened.

**The Quigleys: Wild Life**

p.19: **If you were visiting the wildlife park, would you like Will to be your guide? Click ‘Yes’ or ‘No’ and explain your answer.**

The Quigley family is visiting a wildlife park. Answers will be subjective but could mention, for example, that:

- Will is very knowledgeable.
- He explains lots of interesting facts about the big, fierce animals.
- He particularly likes rhinos, crocodiles, bats, lions, jaguars, leopards and wolves.
- His facts focus mainly on animals’ abilities to bite, rip, and crunch.
- He won’t let Lucy (his sister) visit the farmyard, where the small, cute animals live.

- When faced with them, Will is scared of the lions.
- His facts often take the form of quiz questions only he can answer.
- He keeps scoring himself highly on his own quiz questions.
- His mother seems to be as fed up with him as Lucy is: the text says, ‘Mum was so fascinated that she had to go and sit down in a café.’

p.40: **Imagine the wildlife park wants to create a guidebook about the white rhino. Can you help by finding facts about the white rhino in this story?**

Within the story are the following facts.
• The White Rhino’s Latin name is *Ceratotherium Simum Simum*.
• It is a huge animal, 20 times size of a small child.
• It has 2 horns, 3 toes on each foot and hairs in its ears.
• It has poor eyesight but a very keen sense of smell.
• It eats grass, but has ‘a terrible temper’.
• When angry, the white rhino will pant, and wipe the ground with its large front horn.

The text also suggests that rhino poo smells ‘so bad that you had to walk on tiptoe, with your face pointing up at the sky, or you would fall unconscious to the ground’, and that rhinos are soothed by a calm, quiet voice.

**Double Trouble**

p.8: *Which words and phrases in the text show you how the boy feels about moving to the Close? Use this evidence to help you describe his thoughts and feelings.*

Jack and Shazia introduce themselves to a new boy who has just moved into their street and looks exactly like Jack. The boy is rude. The relevant words and phrases in the text are:

• After Jack and Shazia introduce themselves: “So what?” said the boy, not even bothering to look at Jack.’
• “We live in the Close,” explained Shazia. “And?” said the boy.
• “The other side of town where we used to live is way better,” said the boy.’
• “And at least I’ll still get to go back there for school instead of going to the dump I bet you go to.”
• ‘The boy wasn’t being very friendly. Jack decided maybe it was time to go.’

Answers should draw conclusions from this information (for example that the boy is unhappy to have moved), rather than simply mentioning it.

p.29: *Based on what you have found out about Oliver so far, what do you predict will be happening at Jack’s school? Click on a sentence and write why.*

The options given are ‘Oliver is making friends’, ‘Oliver is being naughty’ and ‘Oliver is working hard’.

The only really sensible conclusion is that Oliver is being naughty, although optimistic responses shouldn’t be discounted completely. Evidence for this is given in reports of Oliver’s past instances of bad behaviour at his own school:
• The text says ‘there were so many that Jack was amazed that Oliver had found the time to fit in so much rule-breaking’. Teachers are immediately hostile towards him.
• Miss Lynch refers to ‘last week’s incident with the school hamster’.
• She says he spends ‘more time outside [the headmaster’s] office than anywhere else’.
• All the other pupils ignore him and assume he is stealing. Optimistically, the previous text message from Shazia could be mentioned; it said, ‘Everybody here thinks Oliver is you. Soooooo funny!’ Answers could use this to conclude that Oliver is fitting in and making friends, and even suggest he is turning over a new leaf. However, later on the page (but after the activity icon), a second message from Shazia is received, which reads, ‘You’ve got to come here. Oliver’s gone crazy. Going to flood the boys’ toilets at break time!’

**Damian Drooth and the Disappearing Daughter**

p.11: **What do you think the ‘little accident’ might have been? Explain why, using evidence from the text to support your answer.**

From the text (written in Damian’s voice), we know that:
• ‘Mum cooks for weddings and parties stuff like that.’
• ‘When I go with her, I get stuck with the washing up.’
• ‘Mum carried piles of plates into the food tent’.
• ‘I’m not allowed to do this after a little accident I had.’
• Damian protests, ‘Can I help it if plates are slippery?’

Answers should be able to conclude that the ‘little accident’ was that Damian has, at some point, dropped some plates when carrying them.

**Come Down, Golden**

p.20: **What do you think is making the noises that Louis can hear? Explain your answer using references from the text.**

Louis is a wheelchair-bound boy who desperately wants a dog. As he lies dreaming about this, he hears noises just outside his room. Of course, he cannot get up to investigate. Answers will be subjective but could mention:
• The first noise Louis hears is ‘a sharp tap, as if a stone had been dropped onto the roof’. It is repeated, and sounds ‘like the start of hail. But it hardly ever hailed’.
• Louis sees something moving outside on his windowsill.
• The next noise is ‘a soft scratching’.
• Louis thinks, ‘Could there be a cat out there? Not unless it had climbed up the big birch tree and then leapt across to the window ledge.’
• He then considers, ‘it had to be something that could fly – a bat or an owl – but he’d never heard of anyone seeing those creatures around town.’
• We also know that a monkey escaped from the zoo the evening before, and hadn’t been caught by that morning. Louis is told about this in the park, and it is mentioned again by his father, who saw it on the news.

Answers should really be able to guess that the noises are made by the monkey, especially given the book’s title, blurb and illustrations.

p.39: **What do you think caused the leaves to fall? Refer back to the text to find the clues the author has given so far to support your answer.**
While Louis is looking at the autumn colours, ‘an unusually big flurry of leaves floated to the ground’. Of course falling leaves in autumn is not unusual, but answers should mention the monkey, which has been a constant topic of conversation since the question discussed above.
Evidence that the monkey is nearby includes:
• Louis hears a ‘whee whee’ sound, which he knows from school to be a monkey sound.
• Jazz, an ecology student and Louis’s carer, finds a gnawed stick stripped of bark under the tree, studies it closely and keeps it.
• Annabelle (Louis’s young sister) says she has seen the monkey in a tree, but no-one believes her.

p.43: **Why has the author told us about the zoo planning to destroy the monkey? Think about what Louis might do now and explain your answer carefully.**
While Louis is drawing, the monkey suddenly appears beside him. He is about to ask his mother to call the zoo hotline when the news announces that the zoo will destroy the monkey when it is found. Answers could mention that:
• The zoo believes it needs to destroy the monkey because it has been out of captivity too long: as a consequence, the other monkeys would not accept its return – but it will also be too wild to tame.
• Louis has realised that the monkey is not dangerous, just scared and curious.
• The monkey seems affectionate: ‘it pressed lightly against his leg with its warm body and reached up a small brown hand’.
• Louis thought its face looked ‘almost human’.
• Louis loves animals, and desperately wants a pet. He may want to protect or even keep the monkey, especially if the alternative is for it to be destroyed.
**Flash the Dog Bounces In!**

p.10: **Would you enjoy looking after your own dog?**
Any answer should be acceptable, as the question asks for an opinion. It needn’t refer directly to the text, but must be justified appropriately. For instance:
- Yes, because I like animals. I would like to take the dog for walks and having a companion to play with at home.
- No, because I would not enjoy having to walk it every day and clear up its mess.

**Mountain Tales of Norway**

p.15: **Do you think Marit will be angry with Gudbrand?**
Gutbrand took a cow to market for his wife Marit, but traded it for decreasingly valuable things until he was left empty-handed. The most likely conclusion is ‘Yes’. Justification could include the following evidence from the text and ideas from similar stories.
- Gudbrand has lost one of the couple’s cows.
- Marit thought he would bring money back with him.
- This story is a little like *Jack and the Beanstalk*, when Jack leaves with a cow and comes back with magic beans. Jack’s mother is cross with him.

The other possible conclusion is ‘No’. The evidence in the text and from inference is:
- The couple is described as ‘very happy’ and we are told that they ‘never, ever quarrelled.’
- They still have another cow.
- Gudbrand tried to sell the cow for pocket money, not because they were desperate.
- Gudbrand has returned safely rather than starving to death, because his final swap was for food.

p. 27: **What would you do to stop the trolls if you were Halvor on Midsummer Eve?**
Trolls swarm down a mountain every Midsummer Eve and terrorise Halvor’s home, simply because it is the nearest. Children will have different ideas about what they might do, but they should consider the following in their answers.
- There are lots of trolls – more than one person could fight.
  - The trolls like to sing loudly and dance wildly, smashing plates, cups and saucers.
  - They liked to climb the curtain to swing from the rafters.
  - The trolls liked to eat and drink most of all.
The Pirates in an Adventure with Scientists: Quest for Treasure

p.22: What do you think the Pirate Captain imagines that the prize will be?
The options given are ‘Treasure’, ‘Recognition’, ‘Best Pirate Award’ and ‘A new ship’.
At this point in the story, the Pirate Captain has just been told by the Scientist that the ship’s parrot, ‘Polly’ is in fact a dodo. The scientist asks to present Polly to the Royal Society in London where she could win a prize for best scientific discovery.
Answers could refer to the facts that:
- the Pirate Captain has set his heart on becoming Pirate of the Year.
- he has had to lie about how much treasure he has on the application form.
- ‘On hearing the word ‘prize’, the Pirate Captain’s eyes lit up. “Is this prize valuable?” he asked.’
- “Of course! It’s priceless!” the Scientist replied.
Answers are most likely to conclude, therefore, that the Pirate Captain imagines that the prize will be treasure.

p. 28: At this point in the story, how do you feel about the Pirate Captain?
The Pirate Captain has won the award at the Royal Society, but has only been given a tiny gold cup and a set of science books.
Children’s answers will be subjective, but could mention that:
- The Pirate Captain is a bit of an underdog.
- He is very well liked by his crew, and seems a sympathetic character.
- He was expecting treasure and feels he has been misled by the Scientist.
Children are likely, therefore, to feel sorry for the Captain, but may also argue that he is not very clever as he should have found out what the prize was before he entered the competition.

Whose Is This?

p. 9: Do you think the girls will stay helping on the stand?
Refer to the text to give reasons for your answer.
Maria’s parents are working on an information stand at a culture fair. Although the question asks for an opinion, the best-justified answers should conclude it is unlikely that Maria and Kimi will stay by the stand, and could refer to the following points in the text.
- The girls ‘were really excited about visiting all the stalls and finding out more about their neighbours!’
- Kimi says, ‘I want to try all the different foods!’
Maria says, ‘I can’t wait to start walking around!’
‘They wanted to explore right away’.
They give out maps, but ‘soon they got very bored’ and start causing mischief.
Just before the activity, we are told that ‘something on the ground caught Kimi’s eye’.

However, answers concluding that the girls will stay by the stand could refer to the following points.
• Maria’s dad says they can walk around the fair together later.
• The girls ‘agreed to help out at the information stand.’

p. 32: Which word or words from another culture did you most enjoy learning? Select one option and explain your answer.
The options given are ‘Sari’, ‘Talking stick’, ‘Oware nam Nam’ and ‘Tortilla’.
Answers will be entirely subjective. They should give a reason, but may rely on personal experience and needn’t refer directly to the text.
For the majority of the story, Maria and Kimi are trying to find the owners of interesting items of lost property, and the words are introduced as follows.
• ‘Then they came to an Indian stand. A woman wearing a beautiful sari was selling bangles and bindis.
  “Maria,” Kimi said excitedly. “I think this cloth might be a sari!”
The woman overheard Kimi and smiled. “It’s not quite the right shape for a sari,” she said.’
• “Why do you keep giving us the stick and taking it back?” asked Maria.
  “Because only the person holding the stick can talk?” Kimi guessed.
  “Yes, it’s a talking stick!” Moki laughed. “When Native American people like the Lakota have meetings, only the person with the stick can speak.”
• ‘There were twelve blue stones and they led to some tables where lots of children were playing the same board game.
  Each of the wooden boards had twelve holes filled with stones or seeds.
  “Oh, you found my son’s Oware Nam Nam game!” said a woman in Ghanaian dress. “Children in West Africa love Oware Nam Nam.”
• “I want to start making tortillas to sell at our stand,” Grandma said. “But I’ve lost my tortilla press!”
  “Here it is, Grandma!” Maria laughed.
  “Oh, thank you,” Grandma said. “The press makes my tortillas nice and thin.”
“Can we come and watch you make tortillas, Grandma?” Maria asked.
“And maybe eat some of them too?” Kimi added.

**How Do They Make Costumes?**

p.10: *If a costume needs to show the passing of time, why do you think two costumes are made rather than just making the first one look older?*
No reason is given in the text, but answers should appreciate that the film may not be shot in chronological order. Scenes may need to be re-done and, if the costume has been aged for the later scenes, this would be impossible.

p. 19: **Would you like to be a costume maker?**
Answers will be based on the children’s own opinions but should be backed up with clear reasons for their choice from the text.
Answers selecting ‘Yes’ could mention:
- I enjoy sewing.
- I like seeing which colours and designs look good together.
- I like researching history.
- I like hard work.
- I am calm and able to deal with panic!
- I am good at working in a team.
- I would enjoy knowing that the costume I had made turned out well.

Answers selecting ‘No’ could include:
- I do not enjoy sewing.
- I can’t really tell which colours and designs look good together.
- I don’t enjoy reading about history.
- I would not want to work long hours.
- I would get flustered if there was a panic.
- I would prefer to work on my own than in a team.
- I would prefer to be a ... because ...

**How to Be a Sports Star**

p.8: *Which of these diary entries was written by someone training to be an Olympic athlete?*
Diary entry 2 is the correct answer, as the text states all the following would be necessary if training to be an Olympic athlete.
- A very early start (5:15 rather than 8:30)
- Training (rather than relaxing and watching TV)
• Going to the gym (rather than playing a game of football with friends – although football is good exercise too)
• Eating lots and regularly (in this example, three healthy, high-energy meals rather than two fattier ones)

p.30: Answer the quiz questions in the book and work out your score. Click on your result and explain whether or not you would like to be an Olympic athlete and why.
Answers need to come from informed knowledge taken at least in part from the text, rather than stating ‘it would be good’ or ‘I would like to be famous’. They could mention details of strict training regimes, dedication, discipline, special diets, iced baths, coping with pressure and fame etc., so must assess whether this would be for them.

Lost in Egypt

p.27: What part of life in ancient Egypt did you find the most interesting, and why? Is that part of life similar or different to life today? Use the text to help you.
The topics covered in the book are:
• mummies and tombs
• temples
• hieroglyphics
• religion
• pyramids
• the River Nile.
Answers should go into some detail. For example:
• ‘Mummies – the process of the removal of internal organs, body preservation and burial with possessions of value is really interesting, and it’s very different to burial nowadays. I think it’s odd that they thought they could take treasure with them into the afterlife.’
• ‘The River Nile – it’s still important to Egyptian farmers today but, in ancient times, they relied on floods instead of water pipes. I’m interested because my dad’s a farmer and we still rely on rain even in England.’

How Do Lobsters Stay Young?

p.27: Why do you think that the author has included the note about handling woodlice? Explain your answer carefully.
The note says, ‘Hint: handle woodlice carefully. You can sometimes find them under logs or leaves. Return them outdoors as soon as you have finished.’
The experiment this is annotating investigates what sort of habitat woodlice prefer: woodlice are placed into a shoebox containing dry and damp habitats, and their movement is tracked. Answers should appreciate that:

- All living creatures should be handled carefully so they aren’t hurt or distressed.
- The author wants to help the reader to find woodlice for the experiment.
- Woodlice aren’t to be kept in the shoebox indefinitely.

**Machines on the Move**

p.15: **Why do you think that the vehicles have to be ‘huge’ to move heavy loads?**

The text gives the following facts:

- Vehicles’ ‘giant engines give them power’ to move giant loads.
- Their wide tracks or wheels ‘stop them from sinking into soft or muddy ground. The tracks spread the weight of the vehicle over a larger area than ordinary wheels or tyres.’

Children could also be aware that:

- large containers are needed to hold large materials or other machines (like cement mixers).
- cranes and similar vehicles need to be heavy to balance the weight of whatever is being moved.
Brown B Book Band

**Pizza at the Double**

p.24: **How has Oliver tricked Jack and Shazia? Use the book to help you explain your answer.**

Oliver has moved into a house close to Jack’s and Shazia’s houses. He looks exactly like Jack but, in the first book of this duo (*Double Trouble*), proved he wasn’t to be trusted. Nevertheless, Jack and Shazia accept his apology and accompany him to his grandmother’s house. Oliver offers to do several chores for his grandmother, and tricks Jack into changing places with him by:

- ‘accidentally’ spilling cola on himself, so he has the chance to put on a t-shirt that matches Jack’s;
- asking Jack to wear his watch, ostensibly to look after it while Oliver washes up;
- allowing his grandmother to see both boys at once only when she has misplaced her spectacles;
- pretending to get an urgent message and disappearing;
- leaving his frail grandmother convinced that Jack is Oliver, and distressed at being contradicted;
- preparing his father for Jack’s protestations by, apparently, complaining all week that he’d prefer to be called Jack.

p.26: **When do you think this story is taking place? Click on a time setting and write how you know.**

The options given are ‘Past’, ‘Present’ and ‘Future’. Children should be able correctly to answer ‘Present’ as all references to technology, transport, culture etc. in the story are familiar and everyday – on this page, Shazia sends a text message to Jack. Other responses needn’t be discounted immediately, however; the story is, for example, written in the simple past tense.

p.40: **Which of the main characters would you most like to meet? Click on one and write why.**

The options given are ‘Jack’, ‘Oliver’ and ‘Shazia’. Answers will be entirely subjective, but should be well-justified and could consider the following.

- Jack seems loyal, well-behaved and cautious; he tries to stay out of trouble. He likes pizza.
- Shazia is fair and generous, and gives Oliver a second chance. She is also responsible (a ‘register monitor’) and confident.
- Oliver is deceitful, rude and lazy – but, on the other hand, would never be dull.
The Malice Family

p.12: Why do you think the king threw the note away? Use the book to help you explain your answer.

The Malice family is a family of raccoons who consider themselves to be ‘evil geniuses’ – all except Samil, the skeptical and definitely-not-evil oldest son. Mr and Mrs Malice have plotted to collect all the rain in a giant nappy and hold the king to ransom. This plan has worked for eight weeks, and the king’s garden has been ruined. Mrs Malice sends the ransom note but, just as the king reads it, birds peck holes in the giant nappy and rain falls, rendering the ransom pointless.

p.40: Which of these characters do you like the best? Click on one name and explain why.

The options given are ‘Samil’, ‘Mum’ and ‘Dad’. Answers will be entirely subjective, but should be well-justified and could consider the following.

- Samil loves his parents, but doesn’t want to be an ‘evil genius’ like them; in fact, he’s ‘really rather good’. He is practical and sceptical, but nevertheless supports his family – and rescues them when necessary.
- Both Mum and Dad are inventive and funny, and their plans usually turn out not to be so evil after all.
- Dad thinks big and has great ambitions.
- Mum is clever and cunning.

Learning the Ropes

p.8: How does the picture give extra information compared with what is in the text?

Spike’s friend Mitzi is trying to convince him that Summer Camp will be fun. In the text, she describes the obstacle course in some detail:

- ‘You go over things instead of just running in a straight line!’
- ‘There are rope ladders and big rope nets that hang from really high bars.’
- ‘And there are low benches that you have to crawl under.’
- ‘Sometimes there’s mud, too.’
- ‘And a Flying Fox zip wire!’
In comparison, the map of Fun Camp (above) shows that it also features:
- a lake, used for kayaking;
- a campfire, surrounded with benches;
- a tent village and shower block;
- a football pitch;
- a sports hall;
- a climbing wall;
- a canteen tent;
- a reception and shop;
- a car park.
The map also shows:
- where places are in relation to each other,
- which activity is done where,
- images of children enjoying the activities,
- the safety equipment campers use.

**The Quigleys Have Talent**

p.39: Imagine you are one of the judges. Would you think that the trick is the best or worst that you have ever seen?
Lucy and Will Quigley have been taught a trick by their uncle to perform at a school talent show. Lucy was to be inside a box that Will was to cut in half. Will, however, was unwell, and got into the box to sleep. Consequently, Lucy had to cut him in half. Some judges might have thought the trick the worst thing that they had ever seen because:
- Lucy appeared not to know what she was doing, telling the crowd ‘I have to be very careful with the next bit because I haven’t done it before’, and ‘Hang on a second ... or I might do something wrong’.
- she appeared to have no control over the heavy sword, and sliced the stage curtain in half as she tried to lift it.
- she had had to talk herself through each step of the trick.
- Will ‘groaned loudly and gave a great twitch’ as Lucy proceeded to ‘ram’ the sword into the box.
- The special effects had blown all the fuses in the school hall.
However, others could consider it the best because:
- the audience was silenced and gripped;
- it was a very convincing trick;
- when the smoke cleared, Will was not only alive but had also vanished from the box to appear in the audience;
- Lucy’s curtain-slashes and apparent incompetence could well have been part of the act;
- either way it was, as the judges eventually decide, ‘sheer entertainment’.
**Damian Drooth and the Pop Star’s Wedding**

p.8: **Why do you think Tiger Lily winks at Damian? Use evidence from the text to support your answer.**

Mrs Drooth, a caterer, has been asked to prepare food for the wedding of pop star Tiger Lily. She takes her young son, the amateur detective Damian, along to meet Tiger Lily when he insists, and so that he doesn’t get into trouble at home. Tiger Lily seems to be kind, and quite amused by Damian. She tells him, ‘Well, Damian, I’ve got a little brother and he’s always in trouble, too!’

Any of the following explanations could be given for the wink, and will depend on a child’s level of textual understanding.

- Straightforwardly, Tiger Lily seems to like Damian and might wink because she wants to put him at ease.
- From Damian’s point of view, Tiger Lily winks because ‘she was dead impressed’ when Damian tells her he’s an undercover detective. She tells his mother, ‘Damian will be useful on the day of the wedding. I don’t want my presents getting stolen, eh?’
- Alongside this comment, Damian understands the wink to mean that Tiger Lily has hired him for a covert detective job.
- Tiger Lily’s comment about her little brother implies her familiarity with the kinds of things young boys believe, and that she is used to playing along with them. The fact that she continues to speak to Damian’s mother rather than to Damian himself suggests that her wink was probably not covert, but intended good-naturedly to humour him rather than to hire him.

**The Cloud Rider**

p.58: **How has the author structured the text to show how the children’s view of Tanty changes throughout Chapter 7? Look back at the text to help you.**

Twins Jay and Ellie have found a mystical bird-like animal – the Cloud Rider, which came from the clouds – and they take care of it. When they need advice, the children’s father says that he went to visit ‘Old Tanty’ when he had problems as a boy. This frightens the children as they believe her to be a witch; they refer to her as ‘a crazy old lady’.

At the beginning of Chapter 7, the children are very apprehensive as they approach Tanty’s apparently unwelcoming house. The text informs us that:

© Pearson Education 2018
• ‘the gravel drive was full of puddles and the letter box leaned over like a broken tree’;
• Tanty’s ‘staring’ cat ‘really did look like a witch’s cat’: “That cat doesn’t look very friendly,” muttered Jay, hanging back.’
• the children speak in whispers, and gulp as they step into the house.

Once the children are inside, the mood changes:
• Old Tanty ‘reminded Ellie of their grandmother who lived in town, and she relaxed a little.’
• The kitchen reminds Ellie a little of theirs at home, but the twins still ‘sat nervously’.
• Their different mindsets are shown when tea is offered: “No thanks,” said Jay, at the same time as Ellie said, “Yes, please”.

Soon, the three are united:
• ‘Soon they were all eating scones with strawberry jam and drinking cups of milky tea.’
• Eventually Ellie comes to think that she and her brother will be thought odder than Tanty: she was ‘sure that the old woman was about to laugh at her.’
• They bond over Tanty’s reminiscences about Dad visiting, and their shared experiences of the Cloud Riders. Eventually, they share a wink. As the children leave, the reader comes to believe that Tanty’s invitation that they return will be accepted.

p.70: In what ways is the lamb similar to the Cloud Rider? Use evidence from throughout the text.
Alongside the story of the Cloud Rider runs one in which the children’s father has found a weak, abandoned lamb. Similarities between the two animals throughout the story include the facts that:
• the creatures were found on the same day;
• both animals were hurt, weak, alone and in need of care;
• both needed to be fed from bottles;
• the children were worried about both animals and delighted when both began to show signs of recovery;
• The Cloud Rider reattempted to fly the same day that the lamb reattempted to walk;
• Dad needed the weather to change for the sake of the lambs and the Cloud Rider wanted to change the weather.

p.87: This story could be described as a fantasy, a thriller or a traditional tale. Which genre do you think it is? Explain your choice.
Answers will be largely subjective, but could consider the following. The story could be described as a fantasy because, for example:
• the children found a fantastic mythical creature that could speak;
• the children rode on the back of Cloud Rider to defeat further
  fantastic creatures, the Werrets;
• the children’s parents did not believe their adventures.
The story could be described as a traditional tale because, for example:
• it had a rural setting, amidst forests and pastures;
• there was a seemingly wicked witch or wise woman with a black cat,
  who knew of magic berries;
• talking animals are often a feature of traditional tales;
• there was a ‘happy ever after’ feel to the ending.
The story could be described as a thriller because, for example:
• the twins had to face their fears by venturing into a supposed
  witch’s home;
• the children had to race against time to stop the Werrets.

**Flash the Dog Dives In!**

p.23: **What do you think might happen in the rest of the story? Use evidence from the text in your answer.**

Jack can make a superhero dog called Flash appear by saying his name. Currently, Jack’s class is on a school trip to
a local farm. Children can make up their own predictions, but should consider the following.

• Other than Jack, the characters named so far are his best friend Sundar and a mean girl called Sara Spinks, who is obsessed with her mobile phone.
• Jack struggles not to call Flash by accident, and often gets in trouble when his dog appears from nowhere.
• Flash ‘won’t disappear until he’s done something heroic.’
• Miss Evans warns the children about the large, deep pond on the farm they are visiting, and says she doesn’t want anyone falling in.
• The title of the book suggests that Flash ‘dives in’ (to water).

**Big Giant, Little Bear**

p. 11: **What do you think the giant-children will do?**

A giant has taken a man home for his dinner, but the man is pretending to be dead so that he can wait to make his escape while the giant sleeps. However, two giant-children spot him. Answers will vary, and depend on children’s own imagination. They could suggest, for example:

• The giant-children could take pity on the man, and help him to escape while their father is sleeping.
• They could want to keep the man as a toy or a pet.
• They could try to wake their father and prevent the man’s escape.
They could decide to eat the man themselves.
They could be frightened of / disgusted by the man, and leave him.
The next page reveals that the giant-children do the last two of these.

p.35 Do you like the stranger?

Little Bear is a tame polar bear, who has been raised by an old lady and her tribe and helps with hunting. Although the question does ask for an opinion, the only probable answer is ‘No’. The text shows that the stranger is not a nice character:

- He is introduced as a ‘nasty man who lived in a distant village’.
- He laughs when the tribesmen said Little Bear is their Grandmother’s pet.
- He pokes Little Bear hard in the belly (with, the picture shows, the blunt end of his spear).
- He tugs hard on Little Bear’s fur, trying to provoke him.
- He encourages the tribesmen to eat Little Bear, and threatens, ‘One night when your friends are asleep, I shall come to your village and kill you!’

In the stranger’s defense, he is likely only to be used to wild polar bears, which are dangerous and would justify hostility.

The Pirates in an Adventure with Scientists: A Daring Rescue

p.10 Do you think that the Pirate Captain should have sold Polly to the Queen for the treasure?

The Pirate Captain has been awarded the Pirate of the Year Award, but then had it taken away because evidence was produced that he had been pardoned by the Queen and so was no longer a pirate. He finally tells the crew that he sold Polly to the Queen in return for the treasure needed to win his title. It is likely that the children will argue ‘No’, because:

- The Captain should not have swapped a loyal pet for treasure.
- He should have asked the crew first, and they would not have agreed.
- He still hasn’t won Pirate of the Year, even with the treasure.
- The sale also pardoned him, and estranged him from his fellow pirates.

However, children could argue ‘Yes’ as long as their answer is backed up with sensible reasons, based on the text. For example:
The Captain thought that he could win Pirate of the Year using the treasure, which would be good for him and his crew.

Now he has been pardoned by the Queen, he is no longer an outlaw and may return to live in London if he likes.

**Dead Gorgeous**

pp.2–3: **Look at the contents page. Which chapter would you most like to read and why?**

Answers could choose any of the following, but ought to give reasons.

- Chapter 1: Dress to Impress
  Surprising facts about looking good in the past
- Chapter 2: Extremely Cool Egyptians
  How to cope with the heat *and* look cool
- Chapter 3: Greeks and Romans – All Wrapped Up
  Getting to grips with the ‘baggy’ look
- Chapter 4: Tight Fits from France
  Squeezing into the latest fashion
- Chapter 5: Over-the-Top Tudors
  Was BIG really better?
- Chapter 6: Sensible Victorians
  See how fashion was made much easier
- Chapter 7: Well, Were You Impressed?
  What clothes from the past would *you* like to wear?

p.28: **Look back at the outfits from different times and choose one. It could be one that you love or hate! Describe the outfit and explain why you would or would not wear it.**

Any outfit could be chosen, but answers should give detailed descriptions and reasons.

**101 Ways to Beat Boredom**

pp.2–3: **Which of the chapters would you most like to read and why?**

Answers could choose any of the following, but ought to give reasons.

- Bored?
- Put on a Play
- Amaze Your Friends!
- Snail Racing

© Pearson Education 2018
• Make a Paper Boat
• Nature Hunt
• Have a Pizza Party
• Go Stargazing
• Moving Monster
• Art Splat!
• Spy Writing
• Brrr-illiant Ice Sculpture
• Cornflour Slime
• Sand Animals
• Relax!

p.23: **Which of the ideas in this section would you most like to try?**
Click on an answer, then type your response.
The options given are found on the ‘Spies’ page:
• ‘Guess who’ (wear a disguise),
• ‘Speak gibberish’ (speak in code),
• ‘Spy writing’ (make invisible ink),
• ‘Keep it secret’ (write in code).
• Any could be chosen, but answers should give detailed reasons.

**Daredevils**

p.22: **How would you feel if you were asked to perform a death-defying jump? Explain your answer as fully as you can, using the text to help you.**
Answers will be entirely subjective, but could mention the following points from the text.
- Evel Knievel jumped the Palace Casino fountains in 1968, but made a ‘horrific’ crash landing.
- In 1974, he prepared to jump the Snake River canyon on a steam rocket, but his parachute opened too soon and he floated down to the bottom of the canyon.
- Evel attempted to jump across 13 buses on his motorbike at Wembley in 1975, but crashed.
- In 1976 he jumped a tank of sharks, but again crashed and injured himself.
- Evel had at least 15 operations to fix broken bones, but then even broke the metal plates and pins used to mend them.
- His exploits made him a hero to millions of people.
Brown All Levels

Ghoul School

p.33: Do you think Stanley’s parents were right to send him to this school? Select one answer and explain your opinion.
The options given are ‘Yes’, ‘No’ and ‘Maybe’. Any answer should be acceptable as the question asks for an opinion, but it should be well justified and could mention the following points from the story so far.

- Stanley’s parents aren’t impressed by his school report, and believe his teachers don’t push him. They decide to find a school ‘that will bring out Stanley’s hidden talents’.
- Mum suggests Stanley go and stay with his mysterious Aunt Mabel, whom Dad believed had died in a bus crash (although Mum says this is a mistake).
- Stanley seems quite keen to go: he makes sure he’s neatly dressed, hurries to leave in time for his train and feels sure he’ll make lots of new friends.
- It quickly becomes clear that Stanley’s new school is a school for ghouls, ghosts and other supernatural creatures, and that Aunt Mabel, too, is a ghost.
- Stanley seems bemused by his new surroundings and routine, but not particularly alarmed.
- The children are unkind to Stanley (although also to each other), teasing him for being new, a wimp and not a ghoul. This upsets Stanley: ‘The knot inside Stanley’s stomach was getting tighter by the moment.’
- The teachers aren’t particularly kind to Stanley, although he considers them similar to the ‘horrid’ teachers at his old school.

Answers could therefore support either position, opposing the school either for being a ‘ghoul school’ in principle or because Stanley has not (yet) made any friends. Alternatively, they could consider the school interesting, no worse for Stanley than his previous school and likely to find Stanley’s ‘hidden talents’ after all.

Money Matters

p.23: Does happiness depend on how rich you are? Select one answer and explain your reasons.
Responses needn’t refer to the text, but the context of the question is a page that balances the benefits of a high salary with those of loving your job.
Either answer should be acceptable as the question asks for an opinion, but responses must be well justified and show considered thought.
For example:
- I think happiness depends on how rich you are because not having enough money for food, clothes and heating can make people very unhappy. Money can also pay for treats like holidays that make me and my family happy together.
- I do not think happiness depends on how rich you are because I would rather enjoy my days at work and at home than spending my time earning a lot of money and not having fun or resting.

Robbie Ravenbeak

p.3: Using what you know about other stories and lists of characters, what do you think might happen in this play? The answers should identify the following:
- Four of the characters seem to be schoolchildren wearing uniforms.
- One of the characters is identified as a teacher.
- The other character is ‘a Viking boy’.
Answers should probably be able to guess that the play is based in a school that the Viking boy joins, and perhaps (correctly) that the Viking boy does not understand how schools work, so the other children have to show him.

p.19: Do you think having snooker trophies is ‘practically the same thing’ as having spears and shields? The children are visiting Robbie’s house and notice that there are swords and shields all over the walls. Martin tells Ellie that this is the practically the same thing as her dad’s snooker trophies in the glass cabinet. Answers could select either ‘Yes’ or ‘No’ but need to be backed up with evidence to support the viewpoint.
Answers selecting ‘Yes’ could argue:
- The swords and shields are on display because they are special to Robbie’s family, in the same way as the trophies are to Ellie’s dad.
- They may be weapons that have been won by Robbie’s family, in the same way as Ellie’s dad has won the trophies.
Answers selecting ‘No’ could argue:
- Swords and shields are more dangerous than trophies.
- The swords and shields are on the walls, not in a cabinet.
Wicked Baba Yaga

p.32: **Look at the stage directions on this page. How might the actor show how Luka feels?**
After a spell cast by Baba Yaga to turn a boy into a goat is lifted, the first stage direction on this page reveals that ‘Luka is now a boy, but he still bleats.’ His sister Katya tells him that she is glad she won’t have to listen to his moaning any more. The second stage direction says: ‘Luka is furious.’ Suggestions might include angry facial expressions and body language, or an angry tone to the bleating.

Step Inside a Story

p.14: **Do you think Ivor was right to walk out?**
On a school visit, Ruby (an author) and Ivor (an illustrator) have been talking to the class about their roles when writing a book. Ruby has been consistently rude to Ivor. The children ask if they get paid the same amount: they do, but Ruby says that she should get more because she comes up with the ideas. Ivor says that he should get more because Ruby’s stories are so difficult to illustrate. Ruby says that they are not difficult; he is just not very good at it. Ivor walks out.

Answers could argue ‘Yes’ because, for example:
- Ruby has been consistently rude to Ivor.
- He does not enjoy what he is doing.
- Ruby tells him that he is no good at his job.

Children could argue ‘No’ because, for example:
- Ivor should not have walked out when he was talking to children.
- He had been rude about Ruby, too.
- Ruby might have been only joking.

Unexpected!

p.12: **How would you explain what happened to Gran’s missing things? Refer back to the book and make your answer as detailed as possible.**
The plot of the comic strip is as follows.
- Jake Terror visits his grandmother to find that her front door is missing. He tells her but, when she comes to investigate, it has returned.
- Many other things have also disappeared from the house, so Jake investigates by following odd footprints into Spook Wood. He finds his grandmother’s belongings buried haphazardly, and hides to see what’s happening.

© Pearson Education 2018
• That evening, Jake sees a strange creature carrying some of his grandmother’s curtains in its mouth. It has a doorknocker for a tail and a doorknob for a nose. Noticing that the moon is full, Jake cries, ‘Oh no! It’s not a werewolf, it’s a were-door!’

• Jake befriends the creature and his grandmother adopts it as a pet. Answers should therefore conclude that the creature took Gran’s things, but could speculate about how and why.

p.18: Which of the television programmes would you most like to watch? Click on one and explain why.

Answers will be entirely subjective, but should refer to the following facts about the two programmes in question, ‘The Fruitheads’ and ‘Fish-Head TV’. The Fruitheads:

• features Grapehead, Pearhead and Orangehead;
• seems to consist solely of Pearhead and Orangehead flinging jelly at Grapehead, which they do for both half-hour shows and 12-hour specials;
• prompts Fish Head Steve to comment, ‘Television just isn’t good any more.’

Fish-Head TV features Fish Head Steve and Cowboy. It promises:

• ‘a pig in a speedboat’,
• ‘a doctor who claims to be a sandwich’,
• ‘high quality entertainment all day, every day!’, to make you ‘laugh yourselves silly!’
Finding a Friend

p.15: Why does Mum not speak to Alice and why does Grandma start talking about pancakes? To help you explain, think about what the grown-ups are trying to do for Alice.

Alice has been sent away to stay with her grandmother, as her brother is very ill. When Mum rings, she does not speak to Alice and Alice is confused and upset. As soon as she hangs up, Grandma offers Alice blueberry pancakes.

Although this is not explicitly stated in the text, insightful answers should detect that Alice has been sent to her Grandma’s to protect her from a traumatic situation, and to ensure that she remains someone’s priority. In the light of this, the grown-ups’ actions could be explained as follows.

- Mum is preoccupied and worried about Alice’s brother’s illness, and chooses not to speak to her because she is both distracted and trying to protect Alice from the situation.
- By talking about pancakes, Grandma is trying to distract Alice from asking or worrying about her mother or brother, and to cheer her up.
- Both grown-ups are also declining to talk to Alice in order to avoid dealing with their own feelings about the situation.

p.37: Why do you think Alice tells Charlie what she thinks about her brother when she has not told her grandma?

Alice becomes friendly with Charlie, a boy who lives nearby. When asked, she tells Charlie that she feels her parents have always preferred her brother, and that he has always been given more attention because of his health.

Answers could mention that:

- Charlie has been friendly, funny and kind, and has made Alice forget her worries for a while.
- Charlie seems genuinely interested in hearing about Alice’s feelings on a subject her family has been avoiding.
- Alice may not want to hurt her parents’ or grandma’s feelings by telling them how she really feels, especially while her brother is so ill.
**Heading for Glory**

p.18: **Why has Ethan volunteered to sit on the bench? Think about what you have learnt about Ethan and what has happened in the story so far.**

We know the following about Ethan and his football team.
- Ethan is an enthusiastic and loyal member of his school football team, but is fully aware that he isn’t good at football (‘Whatever I’ve got on my feet’, Ethan admits, ‘football seems to go the other way.’)
- The team had two good players: Florence, who has left to go to another school, and Ben, who has recently turned down a bigger team’s offer so that he can stay with his friends.
- Ethan really admires Ben’s loyalty.
- Without Florence, the team’s hope of staying in the district competition will be gone if they don’t bring in three better, younger players.

- Despite his enthusiasm, Ethan states, ‘It was no secret that I preferred reading, writing and arithmetic to running.’

Knowing these facts, good answers should reason that Ethan chooses to sit on the bench to allow better (and less indifferent) players to play, for the good of the team.

p.30: **Imagine that you play for Hollyfield Primary football team. How would you feel about Florence re-joining the team? Would you want her to play or not? Click on your answer and explain your reasons.**

Since having left the previous term, Florence has been unhappy at her new school and is returning to Hollyfield. Ethan’s coach has asked the team whether they would welcome Florence back.

Answers will be entirely subjective, but should consider the following.
- The team will soon be playing in the county semi-finals and could use Florence’s talent.
- The team misses Florence’s ‘easiness. Her lightness. Her laugh’ as well as her skills.
- However, not only did Florence abandon Hollyfield when they needed her most, but she also told them that she thought ‘her talents were too good to waste ... in a team as useless as ours.’
- If Florence does return, one current team member must be dropped.
p.48: **Which character would you most like to play football with?**

**Click on a character’s name and type your response.**
The options given are ‘Florence’, ‘Ben’ and ‘Ethan’. Answers will be entirely subjective, but could consider that:
- Florence is very talented and fun, and does appreciate the team, but can be rude and big headed.
- Ben is equally talented, and refused to play for a better team as he did not want to let down his friends.
- Ethan is no good at all at football, but tries hard and is entirely committed to the team and his friends.

*Charlie Small: Gorillas vs. The Leopard Men*

p.22: **Imagine you were with Charlie. Would you want to help him to rescue Grip? Click on one answer and explain your reasons.**

Charlie Small is a 400-year-old adventurer who looks just like an eight-year-old boy. Charlie and his friend Grapple the gorilla are attempting to rescue their mutual friend Grip (also a gorilla), who has been captured by the Leopard Men.

Answers will be subjective and rely largely on a child’s adventurousness, but could consider the following.
- Charlie, Grip and Grapple know each other well, and used to play together when they were young.
- Grip and Grapple have previously helped Charlie to escape a jungle.
- Grapple also assisted Charlie after he was knocked unconscious by a spraying flower.
- Charlie knows that Grapple will not be able to rescue Grip alone.
- Grip appears to be in imminent danger, tied onto a large stone block.
- Charlie is used to adventure, and is equipped with a practical explorer’s kit.
- The Leopard Men are bloodthirsty carnivores with leopard heads and human-like bodies covered in fur.
- Even Charlie feels as scared ‘as a kitten’. He narrates, ‘my legs became as weak as water and my heart thumped in my chest’.

p.33: **Grapple has caused confusion with his counting! Refer back to the text, then explain what has happened and why.**

While they planned Grip’s rescue, Grapple told Charlie there were four Leopard Men. Just when Charlie thought they had all been incapacitated, a further one appeared suddenly.
Charlie asks, “Can’t you count?’”, and Grapple’s answer is revealing: “Yeah,” cried an offended Grapple. “One, two, three, five, four. Like I said.” If Grapple believes that four is one number higher than five, he will have meant five all along.

**Rocket Ronnie and the Vortex of Doom**

p.8: **What could Veronica be thinking as she decides whether to help the Guardians? Use evidence from the text and your knowledge of her character.**

Answers may be creative, but they should draw on the following information.

- Veronica is a young girl who likes computer games set in space, her favourite being *Asteroid Mayhem*.
- She is walking home from school when three mysterious figures calling themselves ‘the Guardians’ appear. They tell her that they need her help to defend Earth from malicious alien forces.
- Veronica is astonished, and finds it rather odd that the Guardians should have chosen her.
- The Guardians explain that Veronica was chosen because her ‘computer game skills are excellent’. They tell her: “You are thoughtful and imaginative. With your skills and our mind-bogglingly advanced technology, we can become a powerful force to protect your Planet Earth.”
- We are told explicitly that Veronica feels that ‘[w]hat the Guardians were suggesting sounded dangerous, but it also sounded full of fun and adventure’.
- Veronica accepts the mission.

p.20: **Science fiction stories often feature characters that are based on advanced technology, e.g. robots. How does the text show you that SID and MAVIS are machines rather than living creatures?**

The text tells us that:

- MAVIS is a ‘computerised Message And Vital Information Service’, which is ‘an on-board computer’ with a ‘smooth, calm and female’ voice.
- This voice seems to come from inside Rocket Ronnie’s helmet.
- Ronnie remarks, ‘a talking computer was better company than no one at all.’
- SID is a ‘Special Investigation Device’: a bleeping ‘silver globe, about the size of a bowling ball’, which bobs and hovers in the air.
**Beowulf and the Beast**

p.7: **What does the author want you to think about Grendel and how is this book different from other historical texts?**
The book begins with facts about the legend of Beowulf and his defeat of the monster Grendel. It then goes on to give Grendel an opportunity to tell his side of the story.

We learn the following about Grendel.
- He has a chatty narrative style (he says, for example, ‘All right, I’ll put my hand up ...’ and ‘I am hopping mad!’). He tells us:
- He admits he is ghastly and horrible, but says nobody has asked him what has caused his anger.
- He feels that humans have stolen his home.
- He objects to ‘the bad behaviour of the Danes’.
- He intends to tell us ‘what really happened’.

Unusually, therefore, the author presents the monster of the story, rather than its ‘hero’ Beowulf, as a sympathetic and even likeable character, whose opinions deserve to be heard.

p.39: **How do you feel towards Grendel and his actions now? How has the author made this happen? Use evidence from the text in your answer.**
Answers will be subjective but could recognise the following.
- As the story progresses, it becomes clear that all Grendel really wants is a quiet life, where nobody has noisy parties to which he isn’t invited, nobody builds on his land and nobody attacks him.
- Grendel lives with his mum, and has a fond but fraught relationship with her.
- He asserts he ‘did the world a favour’ by eating ‘the worst bardic band in Scandinavia’.
- He only really attacks humans in retaliation – whether that’s for an invasion or for bad music!
- He likes to make puns – such as, ‘Welcome to my land, Beowulf. I look forward to eating you later’.

The author also shows us a picture of Grendel’s simple dream home: a cave, a stream, some garlic, marigold flowers, a supply of eels, no mum to nag him and ‘[n]ot a human in sight’!
**Dog Alert**

p.34: *Why is the line ‘Loneliness wrapped its arms around Zoe’ particularly effective?*

This is a particularly effective metaphor because:

- the idea of wrapped arms is comforting, safe and protective, drawing a stark contrast with the fact that loneliness envelops Zoe with completely the opposite effect;
- the phrase is evocative of Zoe’s mind-set – of her desperation for comfort and understanding;
- it furthermore draws to mind the physical difficulties of being completely embraced at all when in a wheelchair as Zoe is.

p.56: *Re-read the description of the snowstorm. Explain how it makes the reader feel and why it is effective.*

Readings will be relatively subjective, but should make close textual reference to the passage in question:

‘A snowstorm blew in that afternoon. Zoe sat at a window, staring at the swirling flakes. The house across the road became a ghost house, lost in whiteness. The wind gusted and howled like a banshee, rattling branches against the roof and flapping the plastic covering on the construction materials lying outside.’

Answers could mention that, for example:

- the words ‘ghost’ and ‘banshee’ make the snowstorm seem eerie and menacing.
- the contrast of the storm’s equal effect on natural and man-made features (the ‘rattling branches’ and ‘plastic covering’ alike) implies that it is encompassing and inescapable.
- Zoe’s position is completely isolated, as no other living being can be seen. In conjunction with Zoe’s inability to travel through snow in her chair, this may convey an impression that she is stranded.

**Pet Finders Underground**

p.41: *What genre do you think this story fits into and why?*

The story has a modern-day setting, and follows the exploits of two friends who form a pet-finding agency. Answers are most likely to suggest that the story fits into the mystery or adventure genre, because:

- the children in the story follow clues to solve the mystery of a missing cat;
- they end up exploring spooky sea caves and catching thieves who are selling endangered creatures.
The Amazing Adventures of Erik

p. 9: Do you think Erik’s family treat him well? Although either answer should be acceptable if well-justified, the most sensible conclusion is ‘No’:
- Erik’s brothers laugh at Erik’s offer to guard a tree from which apples are being stolen. They call him a ‘silly nincompoop’.
- His father expected him to have failed to stay awake on guard.
- When riding, Erik is left to take the donkey because his brothers take the horses.
However, Erik does appear to be well-fed and sheltered.

p.24: Why did Erik smile even though his family was being unkind?
Erik has travelled to find the firebird, but has returned empty-handed and his family is jeering at him. Unbeknownst to his family, however, Erik found and captured the firebird from the tsar, but then gave him back because he has learned that he doesn’t want to be a liar and a cheat. In the process, he has won a kiss from ‘the beautiful Elena’, the tsar’s daughter.
Eric may be smiling for any of the following reasons.
- Eric knows that his brothers’ jeers are unfounded.
- He chooses not to tell them the truth, so we know he no longer cares about their opinion.
- He knows he did the right thing by returning the firebird.
- He touches his cheek, remembering where Elena kissed him: he knows that he has some friends who appreciate what he has done.

Dinkin Dings and the Frightening Things

p.30: Do you think Dinkin’s plan is going to work? Dinkin believes that his neighbours are Zombaliens, and has formulated a plan to expose them. The plan involves his friends, the ‘Frightening Things’ (a goofy trio of not-too-horrific monsters) distracting a small dog while Dinkin uses his ‘Zomb-O-Tron 6000’ (a torch, plunger and camera fixed to a colander) to de-mask them. Well-justified optimism should be acceptable, but the most likely conclusion is ‘No’. The text shows that:
- The Frightening Things have not usually got things right in the past.
- The Zomb-O-Tron 6000 has not been tested.
- No-one else in the story believes in the existence of Zombaliens, so the de-masking may well fail.
- Even if Dinkin takes his pictures, the world may not be convinced of the Zombaliens’ existence.
p.48: **What did you find surprising about the last three chapters of this story?**
Children’s answers will be subjective, but the last three chapters of the story reveal the following surprises:

- Dinkin’s theory is correct: his neighbours are Zombaliens.
- They are about to attack, when they become ill as the taste of fear makes them sick.
- Realising this is a flaw in their plan to eat humans, the Zombaliens very reasonably leave town.
- Just when everything appears safe, Dinkin begins to suspect that the new postman is also a Zombalien.

**Porpoises in Peril**

p. 7: **What do you think will happen to the porpoises by the end of the story? Refer to the text to give reasons for your answer.**

Either answer should be acceptable as the question asks for an opinion. Responses must be justified, however, and could draw on the following facts from the text.

- The Science Squad is a part of the Global Environmental Research Agency.
- Taiwanese officials have requested their help to deal with sick porpoises.
- They take this assignment very seriously, and care about the animals’ fate.

We know the following facts about the porpoises.

- Local officials spotted several porpoises near an island off the northern coast of Taiwan, behaving strangely.
- The porpoises have been losing weight quickly, and the officials believe that something or someone has contaminated their food supply.
- There is a risk that the porpoise population will decline, and that eventually all the porpoises will die.

Answers could conclude that the porpoise population will decline and that the porpoises will die. However, the text strongly implies that the Science Squad is a capable and passionate team of experts, and the pictures show hi-tech equipment at their disposal. The more informed inference, therefore, is that the Squad will save the porpoises by finding out what is happening to their food supply.
p.19: **What does Dr Vloodman think of the Science Squad’s clothes? Use evidence from the text to support your answer.**

Dr Vloodman is the official in Taipei who reported the problem with the porpoises. The portion of text relevant to this question is:

‘Dr Vloodman frowned. “Most of the fishermen on our island are very secretive,” he began. “They don’t like to talk to officials like me. You see, our town is so small that everyone knows everyone else. You might have better luck since you don’t have an official look.” He glanced at Reggie’s shorts and scruffy trainers, and Kate’s leggings.’

Answers should therefore conclude that Dr Vloodman thinks the Squad’s clothes are casual/scruffy, and that they don’t make the team look ‘official’. Importantly, he thinks this is a good thing: it may be helpful in getting the fishermen to talk.

p.30: **Would you like to go diving in the sea, like Kate? Select an answer and explain why.**

The options given are ‘Yes’, ‘No’ and ‘Maybe’. Answers will be entirely subjective and needn’t refer directly to the text, but should be justified.

The details given about diving in the text and pictures are:
- Kate takes a lot of equipment with her: a diving suit and mask, flippers, oxygen tanks, a waterproof camera and sample bottles.
- Reggie tells her, ‘Good luck, and be careful.’ This implies some risk.
- Kate has to flip backwards from the boat into the water.
- When Kate dives, she thinks, ‘It’s beautiful down here’.
- We are told the water below Kate looks ‘murky’, ‘muddy’ and ‘shadowy’.

**How Do They Make Bikes?**

p.15: **Would you like to ride a tandem with someone?**

Answers will be based on children’s own opinions but should be backed up with evidence from the text.

For example, for answers selecting ‘Yes’:
- It would be fun to try a new bike.
- It would be good to have someone else helping to pedal.
- It would be good to work as a team to make the bike work.
  
  For example, for answers selecting ‘No’:
- It would be hard to try and work with someone else to make the bike work.
- I prefer my own bike, where I am in control and do not have to practise working with someone else.
**How to be an Explorer**

p.11: **Which item would you put into your backpack last? Click on one item, then type why.**
Answers could choose any of the following, but ought to give reasons.
- Compass and map
- String
- First Aid Kit
- Whistle
- Torch
- Waterproof coat

p.18: **Which exploring skills would you most like to learn? Look back at what you have read so far and write a paragraph to explain your choice.**
Answers could choose any of the following, but ought to give reasons structured as a paragraph.
- How to plan a successful expedition
- How to pack your bags
- How to use a compass for navigation
- How to use the sun or stars for navigation
- How to set up camp
- How to build an emergency shelter

p.30: **Answer the quiz questions in the book and work out your score. Click on your result then explain whether or not you would like to be an explorer and why.**
The quiz result options are ‘Mostly As: Born explorer’, ‘Mostly Bs: On the right track’ and ‘Mostly Cs: A lot to learn’.
Answers should provide considered reasoning behind whether or not each child wants to be an explorer.

**Buried Treasure**

p.23: **Which of these sites would you most like to visit for your own investigation? Click on one place and explain why you would like to go there.**
Answers should select, with reasons, one of the following sites.
- Farthing Downs, Surrey: a cemetery of 20 graves, with skeletons in some of them

© Pearson Education 2018
• Crundale, Kent: a grave containing a silver sword pommel and two decorated buckles
• Sutton Hoo, Suffolk: about 20 burial mounds containing gold and silver treasures, including a decorated helmet, a lyre, swords, spears and an axe
• Wheatley, Oxfordshire: a woman’s grave containing a skeleton, brooches and a broken glass pot

**Why Does Lightning Flash?**

p.25: **What does the author want you to learn from the paragraph ‘Shockingly wet’?**  
In this paragraph the author wants the reader to stay safe by learning that:

- water and electricity are dangerous together;
- water quickly conducts electricity;
- electrical gadgets, sockets and light switches must never be touched with wet hands, as dangerous shocks could happen.
Grey B Book Band

**Charlie Small: Chasm of the Killer Bees**

p.15: **What does the author want us to think about the bear? Use evidence from the text to help you explain in detail.**

Charlie Small is a 400-year-old adventurer who looks just like an eight-year-old boy. Travelling over a bleak landscape on his hover scooter, Charlie falls into a chasm and comes face to face with a bear. The text supplies the following information about the bear.

- It is ‘young but ferocious-looking’;
- ‘If he stood upright, he would only come up to [Charlie’s] chest’;
- ‘He was strong and had a large jaw full of teeth’;
- ‘Long claws curved from paws as big as baseball mits!’;
- ‘The bear snarled, leaping from the cave mouth towards [Charlie]’;
- The bear growled again, drawing back his lips to reveal terrible yellow fangs.’

These descriptions all present the bear as hostile, aggressive and frightening. However, the bear also growls in an odd way:

- “Grrl, grrrr ... fell!” the bear snarled’.
- “Grr ... fell,” the bear growled again’.

Observant answers may detect the inclusion of a human word in the bear’s growls, and deduce that it is not perhaps as threatening as first it seems.

p.42: **Charlie was attacked by Killer Bees and Badland Crabs. Which would you be most scared of if they were chasing you?**

The question requests an opinion, so answers will be subjective. They should, however, draw on the following information from the text.

If killer bees is chosen, answers could indicate that:

- they are huge (‘as big as overstuffed pillows’);
- they can fly;
- they have ‘horrible curved jaws that opened and closed threateningly’;
- ‘their deadly stingers were as long as swords’;
- their noise is ‘incredible, like a thousand chainsaws buzzing’;
- they are particularly vengeful.

If Badland Crabs are chosen, answers could indicate that:

- every crab is fast, aggressive and ‘as big as a car’;
- they are ‘armour-plated’ and ‘razor-clawed’;
- their ‘massive, curved claws looked powerful enough to snap a tree trunk’ or ‘snip [Charlie’s] leg right off’, and ‘can crush a car’;
- they have ‘beady, bloodshot eyes that wave about on stalks’;
- ‘they live on buffalo, bear and humans’;
- ‘escape on foot is impossible.’
**Rocket Ronnie and the Bleekoids**

p.46: **Which place would you most like to visit? Click on a destination and write why.**
The options given are ‘space station’, ‘the Moon’, ‘Earth’ and ‘deep space’.
Answers will be wholly subjective, and needn’t rely on evidence in the text. They should, however, be well reasoned.

p.48: **Why is Veronica smiling when she says ‘There was something I needed to clear up’? Use the book to help you explain your answer.**

Veronica Witworth appears to be an ordinary schoolgirl, but can also transform into the superhero Rocket Ronnie and travel in space. In this story, she discovers that there are some strange aliens made of dust who intend taking over and redeveloping Earth. Veronica defeats them using a mini vacuum cleaner. She is smiling because:

- Veronica is making a pun, using the phrase ‘to clear up’ both in its figurative sense meaning ‘to sort out’ and, undetected by her teacher, in its literal sense ‘to clean up’ – referring to the planet-saving vacuuming she has just done;
- her teacher is unaware that she is a superhero who has saved the world, so Veronica is sharing a knowing joke with the reader (using dramatic irony).

**Beowulf Meets his Match**

p.5: **How does the last paragraph on this page suggest that this story is going to be different from other historical stories about Beowulf?**
The page tells us a brief history of the legend of Beowulf. Its last paragraph says:

‘There are plenty of retellings of the story but there has not been one quite like this. Let’s hear from Grendel’s mother for once and find out what she has to say for herself ...’

The paragraph, therefore, declares openly that it will be different from other historical stories about Beowulf by suggesting that it will be told from the perspective of the story’s monster, Grendel’s mother.
**A Friend in Need**

p.28: Why do you think this chapter is called ‘A Warning’? Refer to the text to help you explain your answer.
Charlie and Alice have run away to the city, to try to find Charlie’s birth mother. They discover that where she lives is not as nice as they expected at all. The chapter features the following literal warnings.
- A woman with a ‘hardened’ face that they meet in the corridor tells the children in which flat Charlie’s mother lives, but says, ‘when you see her, tell her she still owes me that week’s rent I lent her.’
- When Charlie’s mother opens her door, we are told that ‘Charlie was about to call out, but his mum put a finger to her lips. Silently, she gave Charlie a big hug before ushering them inside.
These facts also provide the wider warning that that things aren’t as Charlie hoped they would be for his mother, and that his hopes to return to her will therefore not be realised.

p.48: Having read the story, what message do you think the author is trying to give the reader? Explain your answer in detail.
The story contains lots of messages, but any chosen should be backed up with examples from the text. They could include the following.
- The importance of loyalty and friendship: Alice, for example, covers for and accompanies Charlie when he leaves for the city. The children listen to each other’s family problems and support one another.
- Appreciation of what you have / realisation that family can be found anywhere: Charlie, for example, realises that his foster parents care for him a very great deal, and will always keep him safe. He says, ‘Maybe I can have more than one home.’
- The importance of communication and honesty: Alice, for example, finally confronts her mother about feeling abandoned and asks for the truth about her brother’s health, and Charlie learns the truth about his mother’s circumstances – all of which information helps the characters to find solutions.

**Stage Fright**

p.10: Which child is least worried about breaking the rules? Click on one picture and explain your choice.
Zak and Zoe’s parents run a theatre and the children decide to explore under the stage, which they have been forbidden to do.
Zak is the least scared. We know this because of the following exchange, to which answers should refer.

‘Zak turned to his sister. There was a gleam in his eye. “Let’s look under the stage,” he whispered. “I want to see what it’s like down there.”

“But we’re not allowed!” Zoe gasped. “If we get caught we’ll be in BIG trouble.”

“Well, we won’t get caught then,” said Zak. “I want to find the trapdoor that Dan James uses in the show. Come on.” Zak led Zoe down some steps to an old wooden door behind the stage.

“But Mum and Dad said …” Zoe hesitated. “Scaredy cat,” Zak teased.’

p.22: **Why do you think that Zak was unable to scream when he was under the stage? Refer back to the book for evidence to use in your answer.**

The actor Dan James has told Zak and Zoe the story of ‘the Scaredy Cat’, which:

- ‘preys on foolish children who don’t listen to warnings’;
- will ‘take your entire voice’;
- will make you ‘scream but no sound will come out’.

Zak has:

- just proved himself to be such a child by venturing under the stage and scoffing at Dan’s story;
- been plunged into darkness under the stage alone, when ‘the light went out’;
- crashed into things and become convinced he is being chased;
- seen a pair of ‘fiery eyes’ belonging to a ‘huge black cat with bared claws’.

Children may conclude any of the following.

- The ‘Scaredy Cat’ is real and has stolen Zak’s voice.
- Zak has simply become so terrified he is unable to scream.
- Zak has become so convinced of the story’s truth that his body is playing tricks on him.

**Rat Island**

p.25: **How do you think Tam feels about the job the captain gives him? Use evidence from the text to add detail to your answer.**

At 10 years old, the orphan Tam has found himself on board a pirate ship with the fearsome captain Ezekiel Tombs. Tombs wants Tam to spy on the other pirates so bribes him with a large gold coin.

The question requests an opinion, but answers should draw upon the following information.
With distaste, Tam calls his job that of ‘a snitch, a sneak ... a rat.’
Tam knows already how the crew feels about the captain: they ‘feared him greatly and hated him more.’
We know that Tam ‘liked’ a crewmate who Tombs marooned on the forsaken and infested Rat Island, and confides in Old Two Fingers, whom the captain calls a ‘snake’.
As Tombs tells Tam, if the crew ‘discover the coin they will tear you to shreds and feed you to the sharks’.
Tombs also threatens, ‘if I find you to be untrustworthy, boy, I will do the same’.
Tam is ‘terrified’ of the captain, fearing that he ‘would be the next target for his blade.’
He knows that he ‘could do nothing about it. To refuse the captain was unthinkable.’
He admits, ‘I have dreamed of such’ as the gold coin Tombs offers him.

Answers are therefore likely to conclude that Tam is highly reluctant to become the captain’s spy despite the lure of the gold, but that he has no choice in the matter.

p.50: Why does the author use the phrase ‘like a coffin lid closing’? Use evidence from the story so far to explain this fully.

Tam is torn between loyalties to the crew and the captain when the crew mutinies. They discover the gold coin Tombs paid Tam and, while Tam is unconscious, have apparently cast both adrift. The fleeting relief Tam feels on seeing an island is cut short when Tombs names it as ‘Rat Island’. Tam’s reaction to this name is described as a feeling ‘like a coffin lid closing’.
The simile is employed to imply that Tam feels Rat Island means his certain death, as surely as if he were being shut in a coffin.
Much is said of Rat Island, and answers should draw on the following reports.

- As Tam has narrated, ‘skull-shaped’ Rat Island is ‘[t]he place all pirates feared the most. A place of nightmares. A place of death.’
- Jimmy Tarbottom was marooned there and, as the ship sailed away, cried out, ‘Don’t leave me here! Not here!’ Tam thinks, ‘I had no idea what terrible things awaited Jimmy on Rat Island. But I could guess.’
- Old Two Fingers tells Tam the island is ‘[a] place you never want to go!’ ‘No one live there ... not for long anyway. Just them cursed beasts’ – by which he means ‘[r]ats! There are thousands of them, boy, swarming, crawling, gnawing ...’
- Tombs earlier said, ‘the Devil Himself fears that place. It crawls with vermin. They are so thick on the ground they climb on each other’s backs to get to you. They are so hungry that they even eat each other!’
**Pet Finders on the Case**

p.20: **Using what you know about snakes, why do you think the woman backed away?**
At this point in the story, Amelia and Rory have found a snake on top of a dustbin. They want to catch it but have nothing to put it in. They see a pillowcase on a washing line and decide to borrow it so that they can catch the snake. The owner of the pillowcase is not happy that they are taking it without asking. When Amelia explains about the snake, the woman says they can borrow it but backs away. Answers could mention any of the following reasons.
- Snakes can bite and be venomous.
- Snakes in stories are often dangerous.
- Snakes are a common fear for lots of people.

p.48: **Which prize would you like best and why?**
The options given are ‘Barbecue’, ‘Money’ and ‘Trip to the zoo’. Amelia and Rory have been given all of these rewards for their work during the story. The answers could be any of the above as long as they are backed up with reasons. For example:
For answers selecting ‘Barbecue’:
- The food would be tasty.
- It’s a nice social event.
- I enjoy the sunshine.
For answers selecting ‘Money’:
- I’d save it for something special.
- I’d buy something that I’ve always wanted.
For answers selecting ‘Trip to the zoo’:
- I like animals.
- I enjoy trips out with my friends.

**Dinkin Dings and the Double from Dimension 9**

p.21: **What do you think might happen when Danger takes Dinkin’s place at school?**
Danger is Dinkin’s double from a different dimension. Answers will reflect children’s own imaginations but should be based on the following:
- Unlike Dinkin, Danger is not afraid of anything.
- Danger has done crazy things in the past.
- Danger says that he can be ‘really daring’ at school.
p.46: **Do you think using the Bully-B-Gone spray was a good way to get rid of the bad characters?**
Bully-B-Gone spray is a smelly concoction made of eggs, vinegar, toilet water and Dinkin’s mum’s ‘least favourite perfume’.
Dinkin sprays it on himself to repel bullies at school, and later uses it to defeat the monsters from Dimension 9.
The most sensible conclusion is ‘Yes’.
Evidence to support this could be:
- The monsters were causing havoc and bullying Dinkin and his friends.
- The spray shrinks them and makes them cute.
- With the monsters gone, Danger is able to go home to Dimension 9 and leave Dinkin in peace!

Answers selecting ‘No’ could argue that the horrible spray would also get all over Dinkin’s room, or refer to the earlier use of the spray:
- It makes Dinkin smell horrible.
- Everyone, not just the bully, is repelled.
- It earns him the nickname ‘Stinkin’ Dings’.

**In Their Shoes: My Life as a Tudor Schoolboy**

p.13: **Think about what you have read so far. Would you like to be a Tudor boy from a wealthy family?**
Answers will be based on children’s own opinions, but must be backed up with evidence from the text. They should refer to facts such as:
- Tudor schoolboys were woken at 5:30am for school.
- They were dressed by a servant.
- They couldn’t clean my teeth.
- They used a chamber pot to go to the toilet.
- They had 11 hours of school a day.
- They went to school six days a week.
- They had only two days of holiday.
- They ate their breakfast at school.
- They had a two-hour lunch break, with ale and games.
- They had to remain silent in every lesson.
- They had to obey numerous rules.
- They got a huge amount of homework.
- There was no electricity.
- There was a great deal of illness.
- Tudor girls from wealthy families were taught at home.
p.31: What do you think of Tom’s diary entry? Does it make you want to be an explorer too?

Tom’s diary entry reads:

‘Dear Diary,
Queen Elizabeth has knighted Francis Drake! He is now Sir Francis Drake. How exciting! Sir Francis Drake is the greatest explorer who ever lived.
He sailed his ship, The Golden Hind, around the world. Now we know that
the world isn’t flat but round! It took him three years to get all the way around. He sailed through the stormiest seas ever known, right at the bottom of the world.
Wish I could sail on board a ship with Sir Francis Drake. He’s so brave. I want to go around the world and see many different places. They say there are lands with jungles and deserts in them – and strange animals called elephants and tigers. Never seen a jungle or a desert, or an elephant or a tiger, but I will!
When I grow up I will be just like Sir Francis Drake! I want to discover amazing new food and exciting new lands!’

Answers will be children’s own opinions, but should be based firmly on evidence from the diary entry. They could mention, for example:

- I could discover new lands, foods and animals.
- It sounds great to be on a ship.
- It would be good to be knighted by the Queen.

Or:

- I would miss my home and family.
- I would get seasick.
- I don’t like trying new foods

Dead Losses: Useless Rulers from History

p.5: Would you want to apply to be a monarch? Think about what you have learned so far about being a king or queen long ago.

Answers should be well justified, and use the information given in the following job advertisement.
‘Monarch Required:
Excellent pay, all the food you can eat, luxurious living quarters, masses of servants, some foreign travel (usually to fight in wars). You will need to:
• keep the kingdom safe from invaders
• make sure criminals are caught and punished
• be ready to listen to subjects’ problems and help sort them out
• look super-strong, super-wise and generally superhuman
• be highly respected by all subjects.
Anyone applying should already be royal or come from an important and powerful family.’

101 Ways to Save the Planet Before Bedtime

p.21: The author has used different layout features in this book. Click on one that was helpful to you, and explain how it helped you.
Each child’s choice will be subjective, but answers should give convincing details of how this feature has been helpful. For example:
• Arrows between panels show me the order in which ideas or facts should be followed.
• Illustrations show me accurately how something should look, rather than just describing it.
• Photographs make the ideas in the book seem real.
• Bulleted lists separate information and make ideas clear.
• Numbered lists separate information and show the order of events or ideas clearly.
• Captions tell me what a picture is showing and clarify the information I can see.

p.30: Why do you think it is important for authors to write about issues such as global warming? Click on a sentence and type your response.
The options given are:
• ‘Writing about important issues is a good way to share knowledge.’
• ‘Writers have good ideas about how to make the world a better place.’
• ‘It helps people understand why they need to be more environmentally friendly.’
Each child’s choice will be subjective, but should include justifications such as the following.
• Many people read books and can refer back to ideas they feel are useful.
• Books with clear ideas and illustrations can persuade people to think differently.
• Writers could have creative ideas that aren’t limited by things like money or power.
• Books about the environment often feature rhetorical questions and imperative sentences that involve the reader and can make him or her think or even act differently.

**Birds**

p.21: **Why do you think the author has used ‘Feathery Facts’ boxes on some pages of the book? Explain your answer in detail.**

Answers could observe, for example, that:

• ‘Feathery Facts’ boxes give quick bits of interesting information;
• they separate out the facts from the main text, making them easy to spot;
• the facts are clear to read because they are set out as bullet-points in each box;
• the boxes break up the pages to add variety in the way the books presents information.

**Real Life Artists**

p.14: **Why is Hokusai’s behaviour described as ‘strange’?**

The passage in question tells that:

‘Katsushika [Hokusai] was known for his strange behaviour. The second he finished one picture, he would throw it to the floor and begin another. His studio often became so cluttered with work that he could hardly move!’

Hokusai’s behaviour could be described as ‘strange’ because:

• he appeared not to care about his work once it was finished;
• he may well have damaged the work he threw on the floor, reducing its value;
• he may have hampered his own work by creating such clutter.

Elsewhere on the page, we are also told that Hokusai also did the following ‘strange’ things.

• He collected the wrapping paper used by Dutch smugglers because it often featured copies or prints of paintings by Rembrandt and Jacob van Ruisdael.
• He ‘moved away from painting rich people and actors (the usual subjects of ujiyo-e [Japanese popular art]. He began painting landscapes, and ordinary people doing ordinary everyday things.’
Which of the artists discussed in this text do you most like? Explain why in detail.

Answers will be wholly subjective, but should be well justified. The artists featured in the book are:

- Leonardo da Vinci (painter, sculptor, architect, inventor and scientist). His most famous works are the Mona Lisa, The Last Supper and Vitruvian Man. He left an amazing 13,000 pages of sketches and notes – mostly written in mirror writing!

- Katsushika Hokusai (Japanese landscape painter and printmaker). His most famous works are the Thirty-Six Views of Mount Fuji, especially The Great Wave. He was a true eccentric, and his style inspired the manga comics we know today.

- Rosa Bonheur (painter and sculptor). Her most famous works are Ploughing in the Nivernais and The Horse Fair. She painted and sculpted animals almost exclusively, and sometimes dressed as a man!

- Barbara Hepworth (sculptor). Her most famous works are Single Form and Winged Figure. She was a feminist icon and, unlike many sculptors in the 1920s, she insisted in doing all of her own stone carving.
Night of the Dragon  

p.21: **If you were Ewan, what would you do? Select one answer and explain your choice.**

After finding what he decides are dragon’s teeth in a cave, Ewan treasures them and attempts to take them home. He is stopped by a bully, Sam, who takes the teeth. In the middle of the next night, Ewan wakes to see a dragon in his street and realises it wants its teeth back. Terrified, he watches as the dragon pulls Sam from his bedroom window and carries him away. Ewan narrates:

‘The voice in his head said, *Stay. The dragon has what he came for, he won’t come back.*  
*Sam Peters is gone too. Life will be easy now. You won’t have to be scared any more.*  
But the voice in his heart said, *No, that’s not right. You have to face up to your fear, otherwise it’ll never go away. You’ve got to follow.*

The options given are ‘Stay’ and ‘Follow’. Either answer should be acceptable, but must be well justified and consider Ewan’s two opposing motivations carefully.

Mythic Heroes  

p.17: **Which of Odysseus’s problems would you least like to face? Select one answer and explain your choice.**

Any answer should be acceptable as the question asks for an opinion, but responses should be well justified and could mention the following details about each given option. The options are:

- **Troy’s army:**
  - Odysseus fought for the Greeks against the Trojans.
  - He came up with the plan to smuggle Greek soldiers into Troy inside a huge wooden horse, supposedly left as a peace offering.
  - His plan won the war for Greece.

- **The Cyclops:**
  - The Cyclops was a one-eyed giant who captured Odysseus and his men, and trapped them in a cave.
  - To escape, Odysseus used a long piece of wood to blind the Cyclops’s huge eye.
  - The Cyclops asked his father Poseidon to punish Odysseus.

- **Poseidon’s storm:**
  - As revenge, the sea god Poseidon created a huge storm.
  - It wrecked Odysseus’s ships.
- Circé’s magic:
  - Odysseus and his men came ashore on Circé’s island.
  - She used her magic to turn his men into animals.

- The Sirens’ song:
  - The Sirens sang beautiful songs that lured sailors to their deaths.
  - Odysseus outwitted them by stuffing his men’s ears with wax.

- Calypso’s prison:
  - Calypso was a sea nymph who kept Odysseus a prisoner on her island for seven years.
  - Odysseus escaped only when the god Zeus sent his messenger Hermes to free him.

**Haunting Histories**

**p.5:** Where would you prefer to go on a school trip?
The options given are ‘The Tower of London’ and ‘Mega World Theme Park’. The answers given will be based on the children’s own opinions but should be justified. The text tells us that:
  - The Tower of London is educational.
  - Mega World Theme Park has ‘great rides’.

**p.17:** Why is the ending to this play a surprise?
During the play, a Beefeater has been showing the children around and becoming irritated at their constant jokes, most recently about the ghosts whose stories he’s been trying to tell. Then the Beefeater explains that he sees a ghost every time he looks in a mirror … and disappears into thin air! Answers should acknowledge that the Beefeater has appeared to be a real person and the children have assumed he is their guide for the day. They have been bored by his facts and information, and have been making fun of him. It shocks the children to find that he is actually a ghost.

**Meena the Monster Minder**

**p.9:** Why do you think the monster children giggle when Meena says ‘We’ll have lots of fun’?
Answers should show that the children are expecting to have lots of fun by being naughty and winding Meena up. The evidence for this is:
  - They are rude to her when she arrives.

© Pearson Education 2018
They don’t think they need a babysitter.
Mr Von Kreep tells Meena, ‘they can be little monsters at times’.
Their mother has already warned them to play nicely, not to make mess, not to do magic and not to change (which suggests this is what they usually do with babysitters).

p.23: **Using what you know about Daisy, what do you think she believes should be in the cake?**
At this point in the story, Meena has arrived to make a cake and has brought all the usual ingredients for a cake, including a recipe. Daisy says that Meena has forgotten to bring ‘all the really yummy ones’. Suggestions can be creative, but should be based on Daisy’s personality – for example, worms, slime, beetles, bats ... the kinds of ingredients that ‘little monsters’ might put into a cauldron.

**The Summer Explorers**

p.16: **Which piece of treasure would you most like to have found?**
The options given are ‘Teapot’, ‘Lantern’ and ‘Brooch’. These three items have been found by a group of children using a metal detector to search for treasure on a beach.
Answers will be based on the children’s own opinions but could be backed up with reasons from the text:
- The teapot could be made into a sprinkler or watering can.
- The lantern has beautiful carvings and writing on. It also has a window that can open and could hold a candle, so it would be useful.
- The brooch can be used to mend shoes, or could be cleaned up and made to look pretty.

**Shocks and Secrets**

p.11: **The first row of pictures on this page has no speech. Look carefully at these pictures, then write the story they tell.**
The story is about Violet, a schoolgirl with superhuman strength. Violet has just overheard her clever friend Verne being bullied by another boy. The five panels in this row show the following.
- Violet looking back at Verne, with a look of realisation. An exclamation mark is inset by Violet’s head.
- Verne, looking downcast.
- Violet watching the smug-looking bully leave the room, as the school bell rings. A light bulb icon is inset by Violet’s head.
- The bully leaving school.
- A ghost-like figure in an eerie green sheet peeking around a corner.
- The bully noticing the ghost-like figure.
From these panels, answers should infer that:
- Violet has realised that Verne is being bullied;
- she notices his misery;
- she has an idea relating to the bully;
- Violet dresses as a ghost and approaches him (presumably to scare him using her super-strength).

p.24: Which story in this comic did you like best? Click on your favourite and explain why you enjoyed it.
Answers will be wholly subjective, but should be well justified. The six stories featured in the book are:
- Little Cutie! (a vain duck gets her comeuppance);
- Chicken Caesar Jnr (things go wrong for the clumsy son of a celebrity chef);
- Are Giant Monsters Real? (facts are discussed about how animals in the past and today resemble mythical monsters);
- The Strange, Strange World of Weird! (the ‘clumsiest girl in the world’ temporarily acquires the power of electrocuting bullies when a pigeon poops on her);
- Violet (a kind schoolgirl tries to use her super-strength only for good);
- Fish Head Steve (hungry herbivores try to nibble Steve and Cowboy on a trip to the zoo).
Blue A Book Band

The Curse of the Highwayman

p.5: **What would you do if you were Zac? Explain why in detail.**
Zac and his friend Shona (the narrator) have been told by a builder that they may ‘help themselves’ to whatever they find inside an abandoned pub as it is being demolished. As Shona says, ‘This place’ll be brilliant for props for the play’! Zac is unsure, especially when the builder vanishes. Answers could take any stance. Reasons to support not entering the pub could be, for example:
  - the potential for trouble when taking things that are not yours
  - worry that the building may be unsafe
  - fear of a spooky, abandoned building
  - the mysterious disappearance of the builder
Reasons to enter the pub could be, for example:
  - persuasion by Shona
  - the fact that the builder did give permission for the children to ‘help themselves’
  - curiosity
  - adventure
  - the need to find props for the school play

p.31: **Why do you think Zac is behaving unusually? Use detailed evidence from the text in your answer.**
At the beginning of the story, Zac was timid (he was nervous about entering the pub, and keen to leave it), and made lots of jokes. At this point in the story, though, his personality has changed. For example:
  - He expresses violent thoughts, including that he would ‘take a whip to’ his horse.
  - He furiously smashes a mirror belonging to Shona.
  - His eyes sometimes become unfocussed and he has trouble concentrating on what is really happening.
  - He tries to hit Shona.
  - He stops coming to see Shona, and snaps at her when they are together.
  - He shouts at a teacher.
Zac’s change of personality happens after he and Shona find an old black leather glove in a coffin-like box in the abandoned pub, and Zac tries on the glove for the first time – the first three points above happen at this moment. Zac also becomes strangely possessive of the glove. Although other well-reasoned explanations should be considered legitimate, children should be able to guess that the glove is at least partly responsible for Zac’s unusual behaviour. In fact, we later find out that it is controlling him.
The Dragon’s Tale (and Other Beastly Stories)

p.8: **Using your knowledge of other stories with kings in, why do you think nobody wanted to argue with the king?**
At this point in the story, the king has decided to sacrifice children to appease a dragon that has previously been given sheep to eat. Answers should indicate that, as in traditional tales, anyone arguing with a king may come to a sorry end – be imprisoned, beheaded or exiled for example. Answers should make reference to at least one other story featuring a bad-tempered king.

p.50: **How do you think Odysseus telling Polyphemus his name is ‘Nobody’ will impact on the events in the rest of the story? Explain with reference to the text.**
Polyphemus, the Cyclops, has been shown to be huge, ugly and stupid in this story. He has eaten two soldiers every day and has captured the rest. Odysseus prepares a weapon, gets Polyphemus drunk and tells him that his name is ‘Nobody’. Polyphemus’s response (‘Nobody is my friend, and because he’s my friend, I’ll eat Nobody last of all’) suggests that Polyphemus will eventually have ‘Nobody’ to blame if he is attacked. Any reasonably well-thought-out answer should be fine, though.

Kura’s Story

p.16: **Write a short diary entry as though you are the girl, Kura. Explain how you feel and what you do during the day using evidence from this chapter.**
Around 1200 AD, Kura’s Maori tribe left their home and crossed the sea to look for a new life. The short diary entry could indicate:

- Kura’s sadness at leaving friends and places she knew
- her worry that the trip may not be safe because she had heard rumours of other trips that went wrong
- her excitement because journey has begun well
- the jobs she was doing on ship – feeding the fire, bailing out water, feeding animals and plants, mending sails
- her chatting to others, not working fast enough – and being in trouble!
p.54: Do you think Kura was right not to tell Tama about the moa? Use evidence from the text to explain your opinion.

Kura’s friend Tama went on his first hunting trip with the men, but they could not catch a rare moa bird and Tama was disappointed. Kura then found a valley where many moa lived, but decided not to tell anyone about them. As the question asks for an opinion, any answer should be acceptable.

If choosing ‘Yes’, answers should recall that:
- Kura thought the moa looked peaceful
- one was only a baby
- Tama had previously not killed a stingray because he didn’t want to kill something doing them no harm
- moa are a dying breed: Kura recalls ‘something Ahu told me as we wove: “Not so many moa these days ...” she had said. “Once there were plenty”’.
- Tama had cheered up after not catching a moa anyway, when he managed to catch a huge fish

Answers choosing ‘No’ could mention that:
- the villagers rely on successful hunting to live
- they had previously been unable to catch moa
- the moa Kura found would fill the village’s ‘hangi’ (oven) and feed them for a long time
- Kura knows that Tama and Matua would tell her she was clever and brave for finding the moa
- Tama had been in a bad temper because he had not killed a moa

The Mystery of the Missing Finger

p.9: Why do you think Mrs Clarke was wondering ‘if this whole thing had been a terrible mistake’? Use evidence from the book about Véronique in your answer.

Matt Clarke’s parents have decided Matt should engage in a French exchange to improve his language skills but, when she arrives, the French girl (Véronique) is quite opinionated. Mrs Clarke could be concerned about any of the following:
- She kisses Matt, which clearly embarrasses him.
- She talks ‘incessantly’ in the car.
- She insists English food is bad.
- She seems ‘determined’ and seems to think the Clarkes ask ‘silly questions’. 
An Awfully Beastly Business: Hunting for Trolls

p.13: Why is this sentence a good ending for the chapter? Refer back to the book to help you explain your answer.
The sentence under discussion is, ‘Ulf felt the surge of speed as it [their helicopter] turned north towards Honeycomb Mountain and adventure.’ Dr Fielding and Ulf are going to save some trolls from Honeycomb Mountain, where they are in great danger as a mining company is blasting. It is going to be a difficult task but they are ready. Answers could suggest that:

- we learn Ulf thinks of the journey as an adventure because he feels excitement, and we look forward to it too.
- the ‘surge of speed’ helps to build up the tension and excitement as Ulf heads off.
- it makes us want to read the next chapter.
- it divides the first chapter, which introduces the characters and the plot, from the following action of the book.

Dark Stone Eye

p.27: Why is what happened to Samuel Stetson and Angelina Angel surprising based on other stories and facts you know about World War I?
These two characters appear in the story of the pendant (the ‘dark stone eye’) when Angelina, a mute baker, gives her sweetheart the stone as he leaves for WWI. The narrator tells us that, later, Angelina became a baker in the war effort and travelled out to bake for the soldiers in France. The couple married there, and returned home together after the war. If children have not studied WWI at all, they may find this question difficult. However, they should recognise that war is dangerous, and so it may be unusual that Samuel and Angelina both survived, and that it was lucky for Angelina to be sent to the exact place Samuel was fighting. Answers could also mention that:

- in World War I, women were needed in Britain to do the work that men had done.
- few women were sent into France.
- baking was very much needed at home.

Any reference to other stories set during WWI would make a good answer.
p.122: **Who do you think the character without a name was?**

**Explain why.**

Nanna has told a long story of her pendant, and all the people around the world who have owned it before her. The character without a name is probably someone close to Nanna, and children could notice that:

- Nanna is nearing the end of her story, which we know must conclude with her getting the pendant.
- The pendant was given to her by her own mother, great-nan Elise.
- Nanna is very sad at this point in the story, so it is likely that she has an emotional connection with the nameless person.
- The man is probably, therefore, someone who knew Nanna’s mother (Elise) – perhaps Nanna’s father or grandfather. He turns out to be Nanna’s father.

---

**The Stepsister Diaries: I'm Not Sharing with You!**

p.9: **Who do you think won the argument?**

The options given are ‘Mum’ and ‘Lily’. They are arguing because Mum has told Lily she must share her bedroom with her new stepsister, Tara, at the weekends. The only sensible answer is ‘Mum’. Tara will be sharing with Lily despite the facts that:

- Lily believes Tara will miss her dance class on Saturdays if she stays over (Mum counters that the dance class has been moved to Thursdays).
- Lily has pretended to cry (Mum was not fooled).
- Lily protests that there isn’t room (Mum has had enough and threatens to ground Lily ‘for life’ if she is not nice to Tara).

If Lily is grounded, she will miss ‘Harry’s birthday party at the Sky Riders Theme Park’, which she does not want. The last word is said on the subject by mum: “Well, you’d better be nice then,” said Mum sweetly.’

---

p.30: **What do you think about the way Tara is behaving? Use evidence from the text to explain why.**

At this point in the story Tara has come to stay for the weekend. The question asks for children’s own opinions, but should be based on the following evidence from the text.
• Tara stood ‘stiff as a board’ when Mum hugged her.
• When her dad welcomed her to the house, calling her ‘bunny’, ‘Tara’s face darkened until she was more grizzly bear than fluffy wuffy bunny.’
• Tara refuses to share a room with Lily, and then looks at her hostilely when she discovers she must.
• She complains: “I wouldn’t have come if I’d have known I was camping,” said Tara, glaring at the camp bed.’
• When Mum and Alex (Tara’s dad) are around, she is overly nice to Lily and her little brother Dan, calling Dan ‘a star’ in public, and telling him she’d love to watch his favourite film, but later telling him to ‘Hop it’ and crying ‘Spare me!’.
• She implies Lily is younger than she is, and criticizes Lily’s collection of cuddly toys.
• She throws the toys, and the contents of one of Lily’s drawers, out of the window.
• She asks for red pepper and pineapple pizza although Lily hates pineapple.
• Tara keeps shooting smug smiles at Lily across the table.

**Ampata and the Scarlet Macaws**

p.14: **Do you think the brothers were treated fairly?**
On a mission from the palace to retrieve water from the Lake at the Edge of the World, Ampata’s two brothers realised that they had run out of food and would die if they continued. They collected stream water and took that back to the palace instead.
Answers could argue either response, but the likeliest is ‘No’. Children should consider that:
• The brothers were despairing, and thought they would die if they continued with their mission.
• They never planned to lie, saying of the stream water, ‘This water is wonderful. Even if we cannot get to the Lake at the Edge of the World, surely this will revive the prince!’
  • They decide, ‘We will not lie ... but perhaps just thinking this water is from the Lake at the Edge of the World might make the prince feel better.’
  • Their flask is whisked away from them and found not to contain magic water ‘before they had chance to explain themselves.’
    However, the fact remains that it appears the brothers were attempting to pass off stream water as magic, thus further endangering the life of the prince it was meant to heal.
p.37: **What do you think might be happening to Peruda?**
At this point in the story the two sisters Ampata and Peruda are lost, as they have chased a beautiful ice-ball high into the mountains. The ball disappeared when they tried to touch it. The sisters found shelter and slept, and Ampata dreamed of the macaws that helped her in a previous adventure. The macaws then awoke the girls, and:

‘Peruda attempted to move, but found she was unable to. Something pulled at her hair so she reached up behind her head. What she felt made her scream and brought Ampata running towards her.’

Children may suggest different things that might be happening to Peruda, but when marking them you should bear in mind that:

- the macaws are unlikely to be at fault, as they have proved that they are not a threat.
- the illustration on the page shows that Peruda’s hair is stuck to the ice-rocks that surround her.
- answers could link to the Ice Witch, a wicked being who was introduced at the start of the story.

**Washed Up!**

p.27: **What do you think are the most important similarities and differences between Chapters 1 and 2?** Think about how the different characters are behaving and what they are experiencing.

Chapter 1 introduces the story: three families (the Lius, the Walpoles and the Garcias) are taking part in a competitive survival TV show, and will be stranded on a desert island, separately, with limited supplies. It introduces the families and sees them arrive on the island. Chapter 2 deals with how the families start to deal with their surroundings.

The two chapters contain the same characters and the same location, and in both the show’s presenter (a pop star called Berry Blue) gives ominous and often sarcastic hints about the difficulty of survival on the island. In both, too, the children of the families all seem more skeptical and realistic than their parents about the challenges they will face, and behave in a more practical manner.

The major difference is that, in Chapter 1, the Walpole and Liu adults are excited about the prospects of a holiday and appearing on the television. The island is described as a ‘gorgeous’ ‘tropical paradise’, although the Walpoles’ son notices the presence of ‘nasties’ such as scorpions and bugs. In this chapter, Mr Garcia (a single parent) is completely out of his element: he has never before left his home town.
Chapter 2 shows the situations for all families becoming far more perilous, and starts to destroy the idea that their stay on the island will be a holiday. The Walpoles become scared, irritable and hungry as the parents waste their resources and sense more of the dangers around them in a forest. The Liu parents exhibit the ‘early signs of hypothermia’ on a mountainside and Mr Garcia sprains his ankle while hiking through a mangrove swamp. He, however, becomes braver: he presses on despite the pain and seems fully to appreciate his situation.

The different attitudes of all families’ children become clearer, as all take responsibility for constructing shelters that will allow their families to survive the night.

p.48: **Which family do you think will win the competition?**

Select one option and explain your answer.

At this point in the story, the children from all three families have met, and are beginning to help one another by swapping and sharing resources. However, as Berry Blue reminds viewers, ‘There’s only one prize, after all!’

Any option should be acceptable as the question asks for an opinion, but answers should be justified and could mention any of the following details.

- All the children appear to be cooperative and resourceful.
- The Walpoles and Lius are ‘in larger groups, with more hands to find food and build shelter’, but ‘more hands meant more mouths to feed’. As Gabriela Garcia points out to Oliver Walpole, ‘two parents, twice the trouble!’
- The Liu parents have been no help, but have also not been a real hindrance to their family’s survival. The family has found fresh water, but no real food or proper shelter and are very cold, although Shen Liu has now been given a little fruit by Oliver and some dry fuel by Gabriela.
- The Walpole parents have been a big hindrance to their family’s survival: as well as wasting their water and wetting their matches, they have insisted on leaving, or have polluted, the only fresh water they have found, and scared off a wild hog that Oliver believes could have led them to water. However, Oliver has been able to find fruit, and Shen has now given him some water and directions to a stream. Gabriela has given him a pan she found.
- The Garcias have water, dry fuel and a little shelter, but have been plagued by sand flies. Mr Garcia is also too injured to leave their camp. They have only coconuts to eat, but plenty of them, and Shen has now given Gabriela a mosquito net.
Would you recommend this book to other readers? Explain your answer fully.

Answers will be entirely subjective, but should be explained fully. They could refer to the characters, plot and/or resolution, in which viewers vote for the Garcias to win but the importance of cooperation is highlighted. Very good answers may also refer to the author’s use of structure and/or language: similes, rhetorical questions and emphasis have all been examined in other activities.

How Do They Make Comics?

Would you like to be a comic artist?

Answers will be based on children’s own opinions, but reasons must be backed up with reference to the facts found in the text. They could answer, for example:

For answers responding ‘Yes’:
- I love drawing.
- I enjoy reading comics and would like to be part of the team making one.
- I would enjoy working out a sequence of pictures to tell a story.
- I would enjoy making my pictures funny.
- I would enjoy telling good stories in a fun way.

For answers responding ‘No’:
- I am not good at drawing and don’t enjoy it.
- I don’t really like reading comics so would not want to make one.
- It would be too difficult to make the pictures funny or to tell a story.
- I would rather be a ..., because ....

Using the timeline, which parts of the comic-making processes would you most like to do and why? Use evidence from the text to explain your answer.

Answers will be based on children’s own opinions, but reasons must be backed up with reference to the facts found in the text. There are 13 parts of the process on the timeline, with skills that may be of interest: ‘Creating Characters’ and ‘Developing Comic Characters’. Skills mentioned include:
- Doodling ideas,
- Thinking about characters’ powers / looks / behaviour etc..
- ‘Comic Stories’ and ‘Developing Comic Stories’. Skills mentioned include:
  - Using fun to use things around you to create a story,
  - Using the ‘four steps’: ‘There’s the Goody. There’s the Baddy. They fight, and the Goody wins’,
  - Working on ideas with other members of the team.
'First Drawings’, ‘Comic Roughs’, ‘Developing Comic Roughs’, ‘Artwork’ and ‘Final Artwork’. Skills mentioned include:
- Developing the story into panels,
- Drawing and trying out new ideas,
- Using pens / pencils / computers to create the panels,
- Thinking about perspective and colour.

‘Adding Words’ and ‘Adding Effects’. Skills mentioned include:
- Making characters ‘speak’ and become alive in the reader’s head,
- Using words as pictures,
- Playing with words and drawing them in different ways.

‘Designing a Comic’ and ‘Selling a Comic’. Skills mentioned include:
- Fitting together pictures and stories so the comic book looks good,
- Looking at ‘the big picture’,
- Knowing what readers will like,
- Making posters and adverts.

How to be a Pop Star

p.6: What does the author want the reader to understand about becoming a pop star? How does the diary show this?
On this page the writer wants to convince the aspiring pop star of the hard work and absolute dedication involved.
The diary entry shows, for example:
- the amount of extra time every day (around school)
- dedicated to singing lessons, band practice, guitar practice.
- the diary notes ‘voice tired!’ and that the incessant singing has annoyed friends and family (‘Mum wasn’t happy!’).
- there is nothing other than school and music practice in the diary – no cinema visits or going out with friends, etc..

p.22: Are you surprised that pop stars get nervous before a show? Explain your answer using evidence from the text and your own thoughts.
This question asks for children’s opinions, but answers will probably reveal responses such as:
- I wouldn’t have thought stars were nervous because they look so confident and happy on stage.
- I am not surprised they are nervous when they have to perform in front of so many people’
- I expect they are nervous because they need to be their best otherwise their fans might go off them.

Answers could also make reference to a quotation from Miley Cyrus: “Places that I’m not familiar with I do get a bit nervous, but when I get out there, I forget all about it.”
There is also a graph on the page showing how many thousands of people attended artists’ concerts (60,000 for Beyoncé and Kings of Leon, 20,000 for Lady Gaga and about 20,000 for JLS).
p.30: **Answer the quiz questions in the book and work out your score. Click on your result then explain whether or not you would like to be a pop star, and why.**

The results possible are ‘Mostly As: Star quality’, ‘Mostly Bs: Great start’ and ‘Mostly Cs: A lot to learn’.

Explanations should be logical, informed reasons why / why not children would like to be pop stars, and include references to talent, hard work, style and fame, rather than just stating ‘I would like it’.

---

**Creatures in Danger**

p.27: **How would you answer Globe’s text? Use the information in the book to help you write a reply.**

Globe’s text says, ‘What more do you think could be done to protect seahorses and other marine life?’

Answers should refer to ideas such as:

- all areas, not just marine reserves, could be ‘no take zones’.
- more information about sea horses could be made public.
- sea horses should not be sold as pets or as souvenirs.
- boat owners could be encouraged to take more care.
- stronger fines could be introduced when people drop litter and machinery in the sea.

---

**Future Transport in Space**

p.15: **Why has the author included the picture of the Eden Project in Cornwall?**

This page is about the possibility of the moon becoming a base for future space travel. However, for this to happen there would need to be controlled air spaces where humans could live.

Images of The Eden Project are included as the text uses it as an example of a structure that controls air quality, temperature and humidity, allowing tropical rainforests to grow in chilly Cornwall.
Blue B Book Band

The Highwayman’s Revenge

p.52: How do you think the historical story of the highwayman is linked to the glove? Use evidence from the text in your answer.
Zac and Shona have found a glove in a derelict pub that changes Zac’s personality when he wears it. The glove is linked to the historical story of the highwayman supernaturally through a curse, and evidence suggests it is channelling his spirit.
We know this because while wearing the glove, Zac shouts, ‘When you hanged me, you fools, you forgot one thing: the grim remains of my evil life, my gauntlet. It lives on, indestructible, cursed through all eternity. It will always be waiting to re-ignite the past.’
Other evidence includes, for example:

- The glove was found in the derelict pub and the name of the pub, ‘The Noose and Gibbet’, suggests someone was hanged there.
- When Zac puts it on he becomes evil, aggressive and speaks in the voice of a wicked highwayman.
- When Zac’s gloved hand holds a plastic dagger it becomes real, and an empty sack fill with gold.

This assumption is proved on the next page, when the glove is thrown into the cement: an arm appears, and the sky turns black and the air cold, suggesting a ghost from the past is reclaiming his glove.

Coming Home

p.14: What does Josh mean by ‘for once I wasn’t bothered about other people’? Use evidence from the text to show how Josh has been portrayed so far and how you feel about Josh.
Josh is a lonely character who desperately wants friends but is teased at school and is particularly bad at sport. We also know that he was found by his parents on a park bench. Josh knows his parents worry about him.
At this point, Josh is hearing a voice in his head. He may no longer be ‘bothered about other people’ because:

- As Josh says, he is ‘eager to talk’.
- The voice sounds as if it is talking to ‘him’ as a person instead of ignoring him.
• It is asking for his attention instead of teasing him.
• It distracts him from his other problems.
• The voice, unlike other people, makes Josh feel valued.

p.24: From everything you have read, what do you think is happening? Refer to the book and use evidence from the text to answer ‘the big question’.
At this point lots of children are communicating by telepathy – ‘the big question’ is ‘Who are we?’. Answers could make almost any suggestion, but could mention that, for example:
• We know that Josh and Taz (the two main telepathic characters) are the same age, are both foundlings and both have atrocious special skills.
• Josh and Taz have considered that they may be twins, but look very different.
• We know that all the other children are also the same age.
• We know that all the children can understand one another despite speaking different languages.
• Josh’s younger sister has made jokes about Josh being an alien.

p.35: Is Maya a new person Josh has met through telepathy? Explain your answer using phrases from the text to help you.
Josh was concentrating in class when he was aware of Maya’s voice in his head. We know she must be using telepathy as Josh narrates:
• ‘Maya came bouncing into my brain’
• He ‘didn’t have time to blot her out’
• The sound of her giggling went ‘round my head like a load of soap bubbles.’
We can infer that Josh has ‘met’ Maya before as he narrates:
• ‘She arrived with a great whoosh, the way she always did’
• ‘How many times had we told her? Not while we’re at school.’
• ‘As usual, she took no notice.’

Saving a Sea Monster

p.12: How does the sentence ‘Ten years previously he had been found as a tiny, abandoned werecub’ shock you and change your perception of Ulf? Refer back to the text to explain your answer.
The revelation that Ulf is a werewolf comes as a surprise because, for example:

- There has been no suggestion that Ulf isn’t a conventional boy until this point.
- We have been told that Ulf lives with Dr Fielding and works with her for the RSPCB, so know that she trusts him and allows him responsibility.
- Ulf seems a sympathetic character, who cares about the beasts the RSPCB saves.
- In other stories, werewolves are fierce and dangerous creatures, who attack other beasts and humans. Ulf’s characterisation contradicts this.

The revelation may change perceptions of Ulf in many ways, including:

- Making the reader worry he may be dangerous
- Proving to the reader that Ulf is strong enough to overcome his beastly tendencies
- Showing the reader that Ulf relies upon Dr Fielding as an adopted mother as well as a colleague
- Allowing the reader to understand Ulf’s sympathy for other beasts

p.23: **What do you think Dr Fielding was shouting at Ulf on page 22? Use your knowledge of their relationship do far.**

Despite her warning him not to, Ulf rushes off to get the venom extractor for Dr Fielding so she can operate on the sea monster. Ulf bravely jumps in the tank with it, is in great danger and Dr Fielding is frantic. Children should be given creative license here, but Dr Fielding is very fond of Ulf and scared for his life. She may yell, for example:

- ‘Ulf no! It is much stronger than you... get out while you can!’
- ‘Why didn’t you listen, Ulf? I would never forgive myself if you were injured or killed!
- ‘It will kill you! Watch out for that tentacle!’
- ‘Hold the venom extractor to your chest!’

**Savitri’s Tale**

p.8: **Why do you think that Savitri put all her jewels and fine clothes away? Explain with reference to the text so far and your knowledge of princesses in other stories.**

Savitri’s father had reluctantly let her travel for a year rather than settle and marry. She meets and falls in love with Satyavan, a prince whose father has lost all his riches.
When she marries him, Savitri discards her finery because:
- Savitri is going to live with Satyavan in the forest, where fine clothes and jewels are impractical.
- She loves him, and feels her jewels are not important in comparison.
- As Savitri said ‘destiny will find me a husband’ at the start of the story, she may feel that living a simple life with Satyavan is her destiny.
- Savitri has always valued her spiritual life over her royal privileges (the text says she ‘preferred to read and study the scriptures’).
- Fairy tale princesses often marry poor people / strange animals, etc., and in doing so prove their moral worth.

p.24: **What do you think King Polydectes wanted to happen to Perseus and why? Think about what he wanted for himself.** Answers should refer, for example, to the facts that:
- Polydectes ‘was cruel and thoughtless and took what he wanted’.
- He ‘had fallen in love with a beautiful woman called Danaë’, who did not love him in return.
- Although Danaë could be forced into marriage, her son Perseus ‘was strong, fearless and quick-tempered ... in short, just the sort to let fly with a sword if anyone laid a finger on his mother.’
- The king ‘had a plan’: Polydectes pretended he was to marry someone else and, when Perseus did not bring a present to the wedding feast, he demanded the head of the Gorgon.
- ‘Anyone who saw the face of the Gorgon became so frightened that they instantly turned to stone.’
- ‘Polydectes knew that Perseus would never get anywhere near Medusa: just one glance in her direction and he would be doomed.’

Children should be able to conclude that Polydectes hoped Perseus would be turned to stone by the Gorgon, and then he could force Danaë to marry him. By using the Gorgon rather than simply having Perseus killed, Polydectes could also deny blame for Perseus’s death.
The Mystery of the Poisoned Pudding

p.16: Would you want to eat in a restaurant if you found out that someone had been poisoned there? Write a paragraph to explain why or why not.

Answers will be opinions, but could say, for example:

- No, as there is a possibility that the restaurant’s food was at fault.
- No, as the murderer could strike again in the same place.
- No, as it’d be creepy.
- Only if nothing like this had happened before.
- Yes, as I doubt that the poisoning would happen again.
- Yes, as it’d be exciting to eat in the site of a famous murder.
- Yes – I could solve the murder!

p.45: Pretend you are Matt and write an explanation about who poisoned the pudding. Think about what the different characters have said and facts you have learned so far.

Answers will be conjecture and creative license should be allowed.

Facts used could be, however: If Albert is selected:

- He made the pudding and is the only one with full access to all his ingredients.
- However, he seems happy and loves his job.

If Gustav is selected:

- He is the owner and could presumably demand access to everything in the restaurant.
- However, the poisoning will affect his restaurant badly and he seems very upset.

If Marie Claire is selected:

- She assisted Albert with making the pudding, and was alone with it.
- She had run her own restaurant and it shut down after it was reviewed as terrible – could the poisoned man be the reviewer, Emmanuel Blanc?

If Pierre is selected:

- He carried the pudding to the diner, and was alone in doing so.
- He likes money, so could have been paid off
- He plays cards a lot, so could have been in debt.

If ’The fat man’ is selected:

- The poisoning could have been an attempt at suicide
- However, Matt watched him closely and didn’t see him add anything to the pudding.

© Pearson Education 2018
**Pictures**

p.16: **What do you think the shadow that Sam saw was? Explain your answer fully, using the evidence you have about the setting.**

Sam is on a forest holiday in Saskatchewan when a large shadow appears. As he is taking a photo of it, a girl, Taneal, appears and spoils the image. Taneal does however have knowledge of the area, and tells Sam that the forest contains ‘badger, red fox, moose, elk, otter’ and bears, which ‘are the biggest’.

The shadow therefore could be a bear or, as Sam suspects, could be something larger and unknown. Evidence for this could include:

- Sam said the shadow was ‘gigantic’, suggesting it was even bigger than a bear.
- Sam is a keen nature photographer, so would probably have recognized a bear.
- The name of the country (Saskatchewan) suggests what is later discussed, that the creature may have been a mythical Saskwatch (or Sasquatch) – but children should not necessarily be expected to know this.

p.55: **Why was Sam full of sadness as well as excitement? Explain your answer with reference to the text.**

Sam’s grandpa, who had been a photographer, has had a stroke but still shows interest in photography. Sam is keen to impress him by photographing the strange creature he has seen, and his grandpa has just given him his own back-up camera. Sam is excited about the photos he will take, but would also feel sad about this because, for example:

- the expedition had been planned for Sam and his grandpa to take photos together, before Grandpa had his stroke.
- the fact that Grandpa gave Sam his spare camera to use meant he probably would not use it again himself any time soon.
- More generally, Sam is very close to his grandpa. He misses his company and is worried that Grandpa will not recover.

p.76: **Why did everyone cheer, even Taneal, when Grandpa won? Add detail to your answer by referring to events in the whole text.**

Grandpa has just beaten Taneal at chequers. Following his stroke, Grandpa cannot do many of the things he used to do, so this win is a great signal that he is slowly recovering. Answers could mention, for example, that:

- Grandpa had been chequers champion before his stroke.
Sam had been worried that Grandpa may not be able to play, if ‘that had been lost, too, like his words or his ability to walk freely.’
Grandpa defeated Taneal in three moves.
Grandpa smiled at Dad, so was obviously pleased he could still play.

**The Stepsister Diaries: Hands Off My Stuff!**

p.15: **How do these thought bubbles add to the humour of the story?**
The ‘thought bubbles’ are excerpts from the journal Lily is keeping, ‘the Good Stepsister’s Guide’. They add to the humour of the story as they:
- allow Lily to vent her anger in difficult situations.
- show Lily’s personality, which is jokey and arch, but ultimately kind.
- are often in the form of light-hearted, sarcastic rules or step-by-step guides, and mock the situations in which Lily finds herself.
There are three on this page. The first reads:
‘Lily’s guide to unpacking:
Step 1: Unzip bag.
Step 2: Tip bag upside down over Tara’s head.’
The text then says ‘Trouble is, I think Mum would show me her two-step guide’ and introduces the second:
‘Step 1: Send Lily to her room.
Step 2: Only let her out when she’s old enough to leave home.’
The third reads:
‘Unpacking is **hard work**. Only offer to help your stepsister unpack her suitcase if you haven’t just washed up.’

p.46: **Why do you think Lily confessed to breaking Tara’s phone?**
Lily clearly hasn’t broken her stepsister Tara’s phone, as she has only just got up – and the story is written from her viewpoint. She believes her little brother Dan has broken it, because:
- she saw him leaving Tara’s room early that morning.
- she thinks, ‘fear flickered across Dan’s face’ when Tara shows him the damage.
- she thinks her looks more and guilty and upset as the conversation continues.
Explanations for Lily taking the blame should consider:
- She knows she and Dan ‘aren’t angels’ but thinks Dan must be feeling wretched if he isn’t being honest.
- She remembers how young Dan is, and feels protective of him.
- She feels that ‘as brothers go, he’s generally all right.’
- She hopes that Dan might own up if she takes the blame first, and is astonished when he doesn’t.
Rosa and the Runaway Ram

p.20: How would you feel if you were Rosa?
At this point in the story Rosa has gone to stay with Grandpa Paco because he asked if she would for his birthday. She is pretending to like the farm but is riding on a donkey that is flea-bitten and her bottom is sore! Children will give their own responses as to how they would feel but they would probably point out the following:
- They do not want to be at the farm
- Missing their friends
- Fed up with being on the donkey – sore and tired
- Fed up with the smell of the donkey

p.56: What do you think is the most important lesson that Rosa learned?
The options given are ‘How to be a good shepherdess’, ‘The countryside can be nice’ and ‘Don’t take people for granted’.
Rosa is a city girl who goes to stay on her Grandpa Paco’s sheep farm. She resists country life, but soon becomes involved in saving a young ram and learns to enjoy herself.
Then, when Paco and other sheep farmers bring his sheep through her city, she is reluctant to help out on her home turf. However, she helps and, as she passes her friends in the street, the young ram runs away and Rosa catches it, impressing everyone.
Any of the options could be argued as long as they are backed up with evidence from the text.
Answers selecting ‘Don’t take people for granted’ could argue:
- Rosa learned that Grandpa Paco was getting old and would not be around forever.
- She wanted to hear all the stories that he could tell her before he dies.
- She realised she would miss him when she went back home after going to stay.
Answers selecting ‘The countryside can be nice’ could argue:
- Rosa said her stay with Paco hadn’t been as bad as she thought when she was getting on the train at the end of her stay.
- Rosa enjoyed helping with the sheep in the end.
Answers selecting ‘How to be a good shepherdess’ could argue:
- Rosa learned the importance of caring for the sheep, and of being hands-on with them.
- She heard cries of distress and saved the young ram from the wire.
- She managed to keep it under control during the sheep drive.
E. Nesbit’s The Railway Children

p.11: **Do you think Ruth should have been sent away for what she said?**
The children’s father, who was ‘just perfect’ to the children, has been taken away by two men. The children’s mother has asked them not to question her about where he’s gone. One day Peter plays a trick on the housemaid, Ruth:
“‘You’ll come to a bad end!’ she shouted. ‘If you don’t mend your ways, you’ll go to the same place your precious father’s gone!’”
Bobbie repeated this to Mother and, next day, Ruth was sent away.’
The question requests the children’s own opinion, but these must be backed up with details from text.
Answers selecting ‘Yes’ could argue, for example:
- Ruth said something horrible about Peter’s father, which is disloyal.
- She referred to where he may have gone, which the children’s mother had forbidden.
- Peter only played a trick; he did not mean to be unkind to Ruth.
  - Ruth spoke crossly to children, which is not her job.
Answers selecting ‘No’ could argue, for example:
- Peter had played a trick on Ruth, and she said something in the heat of the moment.
- She wanted to stop Peter from being naughty in the future.
- We might assume she has been a good, loyal servant for a long time.

p.49: **Where do you think the children’s father has gone? Why hasn’t he taken his clothes with him?**
The children could infer (correctly) that the children’s father has been taken away to a place where he cannot escape and where he did not choose to go, and that he did not need his clothes as he would be provided with clothes where he was. In fact, he has been taken to a government prison – although this has not yet been revealed. Answers could build on any of the following information already given:
- The children’s father works in a government office.
- Two men had arrived in the middle of the night and taken their father away.
- At first, Mother told the children that their father had been ‘called away on business.’
- She went to London to see him the next day.
- Mother said that the two men had brought ‘very bad news’, but that no-one had died.
- She admitted that it had ‘something to do with the government’.
• Ruth told Peter that if he didn’t behave himself he’d ‘go to the same place your precious father’s gone’.
• When Ruth asked Mother to step into the study at the beginning of the story she said that their father ‘looks like the dead’ and suggests, ‘Perhaps it’s a death or a bank has gone bust.’
• During their time in the country, Mother has often looked unhappy.
• We are told explicitly that the children’s father is not dead.
• When they meet a Russian refugee, Mother explains that people can be sent to prison ‘when judges think they’ve done wrong’ and asks the children to pray for ‘all prisoners and captives’.

p.101: **Using what you already know, what do you think is going to happen to Bobbie?**
After having lived in the country for a while, Bobbie has discovered that her father was accused of selling government secrets and sent to prison. She has asked a rich old gentleman who is her friend for assistance, and has learned he’s already been working on the case. One day, when the children wave to the gentleman on the train, his wave seems ‘different to usual’, as though ‘he was trying to explain something with his newspaper.’ Bobbie feels ‘something is about to happen.’

The question invites children’s own opinions, but they could (correctly) infer from this that the old gentleman has discovered something new about the children’s father, and that it is in the newspaper. In fact, their father has been released and will soon be returning to them.

**101 Things to do in the UK**

p.23: **Which of the following places would you most like to visit and why?**
The options given are ‘The Roald Dahl Museum’, ‘Toad Hall’, ‘Where Alice in Wonderland was written’ and ‘Hogwarts’. Answers will be subjective, but need to give good reasons that include some familiarity with the stories concerned, rather than stating ‘it would be good’ or ‘I like Roald Dahl books’. For example:
• I would love to see that tiny shed and I can’t believe Roald Dahl wrote all his books in there.
• Toad Hall would be great. I love stories where animals come to life and Mr Toad is a funny character.
• I would like to go punting in Oxford – I like boats and loved the Cheshire Cat in Alice in Wonderland.
I would love to see the wall at King’s Cross Station that Harry used to get to Hogwarts, and imagine that I could pass through it too. Hogwarts would be magical!

_Dead Sick_

p.7: **Would you have liked to live in Egypt if you had sore, stinging eyes? Refer back to the text to explain your answer.**
The cure for a stinging eye in ancient Egypt was:
- Take a tortoise’s brain and mash it up.
- Mix the mash with honey so it gets extra gooey.
- Place the mixture on the eye.
- Pray to Isis, the goddess of healing, for help.
Adventurous minds should be encouraged, but it’s unlikely anyone would answer yes to this. Any close reference to the above would make a good answer, though, and could include:
- I wouldn’t want to kill the tortoise.
- I don’t believe in the god Isis, so she probably couldn’t help.
- The mixture sounds like it would sting even more!

p.29: **What does the writer think about the history of medicine? Refer back to the text for examples to help you give a clear and detailed answer.**
The author’s views are (from many, many examples):
- He feels that there have been many awful treatments in the past but respects the fact that medicine has developed because of some brilliant, dedicated people and ideas over thousands of years.
- He says ‘the history of medicine is packed full of dire deeds and terrible treatments but it is also full of brilliant minds and incredible cures’.
- He hopes it will be inspiring, writing that germs will continue to find ways to survive so doctors will always need to find new cures and need ‘all the brainpower they can get’.
- He says ‘some discoveries are not as new as they seem’ and that some things, like honey used many years ago in Egypt, are still effective today.
- He seems fascinated by gruesome medicinal cures.
- He supports women as doctors, unheard of until the mid 1800s.
Sharks

p.1: **Why do you think the author has used so much alliteration in chapter titles? What effect does this have?**

- Alliteration is used to make the chapters sound fun and catchy.
- Sharks are interesting but feared, and the alliterative chapter headings help to give a suitably dramatic effect.

Real Life Storytellers

p.2: **Why do you think books by Rudyard Kipling and C.S. Lewis are available all around the world? Answer in detail and remember to refer to the text.**

Answers could indicate, for example, that:

- these stories are available all around the world as plays and films as well as books.
- they are written in an exciting way, with many surprises.
- they show imagination that appeals to all sorts of children.
- they feature vivid characters from the author’s own experiences.
- the authors loved hearing and reading stories as children, and remember what this was like.

p.30: **If you had to read a book by one of the storytellers discussed in the book, which storyteller would you choose and why? Answer as fully as you can, referring to the text.**

The four authors discussed are J.K. Rowling, Anthony Horowitz, Michael Morpurgo and Roald Dahl.

Answers will be wholly subjective, but at this level should show some maturity, references to this book and possibly books written by these authors that the children have already read. For example:

- **Roald Dahl** – he had a brilliant imagination and sense of humour and his ideas came from simple things like a peach in the garden. I like the way he played tricks on his own family!
- **Michael Morpurgo** – I love the way lots of his books are about the lives of animals.
- **J.K. Rowling** – I love magic, and would like to read about wizards who seem ordinary at the same time.
- **Anthony Horowitz** – I love stories about spies, detectives and lots of suspense and action.
Blue All Levels

* Title only available to subscribers of Pro Independent and Ultimate packages

**Finlay and the Bogeyman**

p.64: *Would you recommend this book to a friend? Select one answer and write a short review.*

Either answer should be acceptable as the question asks for an opinion, but the written response should contain well-justified, considered opinions in the form of a review. Reference to the book’s style and the author’s decisions as well as the events in it would constitute a very good answer. The response may also refer to the personal experiences and preferences of the reader and the friend being considered.

* Title only available to subscribers of Pro Independent and Ultimate packages

**Extreme**

p.31: *Which extreme sport would you most like to try, and why? Select one answer and explain your reasons.*

Any answer should be acceptable as the question asks for an opinion, but must be well justified. Responses may draw on personal experience and could mention the following details about each given option.

- **BMX biking:**
  - You can pull crazy stunts on a BMX bike.
  - You should be prepared to fall, and need plenty of padding.
  - BMX races use tracks with lots of lumps and jumps.
  - BMX bikes can also be ridden freestyle, anywhere.
  - You need balance, skill and a can-do attitude.

- **Surfing:**
  - Only surfers can experience the incredible power of waves.
  - Top surfers train as hard as athletes, using swimming, running and yoga to build strength and agility.
  - Learners use big ‘Malibu’ boards, while experts use shortboards that allow them to do tricks.
  - Sometimes you have to wait a long time for perfect waves.
  - You may have only 15 seconds to surf standing on your board, but it seems like ages.
  - If a wave swallows you, it feels like being inside a giant washing machine – it can be very dangerous.

- **Skateboarding:**
  - Skateboarding is fast and trick-filled.
  - You can skateboard in the street or in skate parks.
  - No one can teach you to skate: you just get on a board and learn by falling off.
• You can learn leaps, somersaults and slides – but can get seriously hurt if you get them wrong.
• You can also use long boards to skate fast runs on streets.
• Some skateboarders get paid huge amounts of money.

• Rock climbing:
  o To be a climber, you need nerve, strength, concentration, a good grip and to know how to tie a web of ropes to help.
  o Falls can break bones or even kill.
  o Good climbing can be found almost anywhere.
  o Nothing beats the view from the top of a cliff you’ve climbed.
  o You can learn climbing indoors, with an instructor.
  o Most climbing is done in groups or pairs, but extreme climbers climb alone, with no harnesses.

• Hang-gliding:
  o Hang-gliding lets you fly free as a bird.
  o Normal speed is around 40 km/h, but experts can reach 112 km/h in a dive.
  o You can soar, float, turn and even pull a loop-the-loop – it feels like being on a giant roller coaster.
  o To get into the air, you have to run off a cliff.
  o Once in the air, you can ride the wind over hills or use bubbles of warm air called thermals.
  o Riding thermals is like being in a spiraling lift.
  o You can be lifted at up to 10 m/s.
  o You steer using your body weight alone.
  o Storm winds can break a hang-glider apart.

• Base jumping:
  o Base jumping is one of the most death-defying extreme sports: it’s jumping from a cliff with a parachute.
  o You plummet for 3 seconds, getting to over 96 km/h.
  o If you make a mistake, you have 5 seconds to live.
  o You have a 9/10 chance of ending up in hospital.
  o You need gymnastic skills, parachute skills and a lot of luck.
  o Base jumping is so dangerous it’s banned in most countries.

Doctor Who: Victory of the Daleks

p.37: What effect does learning that Bracewell is a bomb have on the reader? Refer back to the text to explain your answer.

Bracewell is a brilliant scientist in WWII Britain, who appeared to have created some machines called ‘Ironsides’ to help Britain fight. The ‘Ironsides’ have been exposed as Daleks, who planted the simulated human Bracewell on Earth to ‘invent’ them.
We now learn that Bracewell is also a bomb, putting Earth in real danger. Answers could include, for example, that:

- the reader is shocked and surprised to learn that Bracewell is actually a bomb, just when the Doctor believes he has saved London from the Daleks and has commanded them to leave.
- the revelation makes the reader realise that this is not the end of the story, as it seemed.
- the reader could be impressed at the evil cunning of the Daleks, and disappointed in the Doctor for apparently being tricked.
- the reader could feel pity for the people on Earth – including Bracewell, who seems genuinely distressed to learn he isn’t really human.

Curious Cases

- ‘Can I have his bedroom?’
- ‘Rami is going to have a beak!’
- ‘Yippee! I get all the biscuits and ice cream and lemonade and cake and jelly!’
- ‘It’s just bad cluck!’

Therefore, rather than being sympathetic, Dina is making jokes and appropriating Rami’s things.

Joe’s Weird World

- p.31: Do you think Dina is being sympathetic towards Rami?
  At this point in the play, Rami has been told that he is turning into a chicken and that it is permanent. The only sensible answer is ‘No’. Rami’s sister Dina has responded in the following ways to Rami’s predicament.

- p.32: Why do you think Mum feels differently about dogs now?
  Although initially against the idea of getting a pet dog, during the story Mum and Dad were turned into wolves and could therefore protect their children. Now human again, they suggest the family gets a puppy. Answers should contain the following evidence:
  - Wolves are, broadly speaking, a type of dog.
  - Mum now knows what ‘dogs’ are like, so is sympathetic with them.
  - She now realises that they can be helpful.
Tricked You!

p.17: **Which character do you like best?**
The options given are ‘Mr Anansi’, ‘Maker Bossman’ and ‘Mrs Anansi’.
Answers will be entirely subjective, but could mention the following details.

- Mr Anansi is ambitious, funny, popular and wily, and has ‘the gift of the gab’. He seeks to win Maker Bossman’s box of stories and takes on a series of challenges outwitting other animals to do so.
- Maker Bossman is powerful and aloof, and lives in a tree. He sets Mr Anansi riddling challenges he is confident are impossible, but keeps his word and hands over the box when he is defeated – although he does then set Hornets on Mr Anansi.
- Mrs Anansi is largely quiet, but also the brains behind Mr Anansi’s plans. She suggests cryptic answers to Maker Bossman’s puzzles, which Mr Anansi understands and performs.
Red A Book Band

Cinderella: The Real Story

p.38: **How does this article make the reader feel about Cinderella and her actions? Use evidence from the text in your answer.**

This article portrays a very different Cinderella from the one in the traditional fairy story. As the rest of the book also reveals, she causes her father and her kind, ugly sisters problems. The article does not help the reader to like Cinderella (although her antics might appeal!). She behaves badly and shows, for example, that:

- she is selfish and greedy, because she wants the Prince and his money, and won’t let anything get in her way. The text calls her a ‘money-seeker’.
- she is violent and stole a baguette with which to threaten the Prince.
- she doesn’t care about her family, and acts ungratefully towards her ‘two kind stepsisters’ and ‘doting father’.

**Cosmo B. Henderson: What ARE you Doing?**

p.7: **As well as ‘world peace’ and ‘a games console’, what else might Cosmo have put on his second Christmas list? Give reasons for each item.**

On his first Christmas list, Cosmo put lots of things that would make his personal life better as he feels he stands out as being ‘weird’ (he wishes, for example, for his sister not to wear egg boxes, and for the bully Kirk to have a brain transplant).

His second list, in contrast, needs to sound very normal for a boy of 11, as he wants to ‘fade into the background’ in school. Additions to this list should be things that most boys of his age would like, for example:

- good trainers that would be admired
- a season ticket to whatever football team he might support
- a TV for his bedroom, etc.
p.16: **Look back through the book to find information about Mum. Based on what you have read, would you like her to be your mum? Explain why or why not.**

It is unlikely (although not impossible!) that anyone would want Cosmo’s mum to be theirs, as she has some very eccentric habits and odd views on life. For example, she:

- gave Cosmo the embarrassing middle name ‘Brilliant’.
- encourages Dido to wear ridiculous boxes for school.
- does not allow computer games as she believes they can melt the brain.
- dyed the dog’s hair ginger.
- is afraid of scissors, and will not cut Cosmo’s hair or use chemicals when he has nits, but uses mayonnaise instead.
- would be embarrassing at school as she has ‘sit-ins’ if she feels teachers contravene human rights.

p.41: **Which of the plans to stop Mum going to the talent show do you think will work?**

**Plan A: Create an emergency so that Mum has to deal with that and CAN’T GO TO THE SHOW.**

**Plan B: Be ill so that Mum has to look after me and CAN’T GO TO THE SHOW.**

**Plan C: Sabotage the school so that Mr Phelps has to cancel everything and Mum CAN’T GO TO THE SHOW.**

Cosmo’s mum is an embarrassment to him; he has no idea whether she has any talent or what she will do at the show. Any of the three options would be a viable choice, and reasons will be largely subjective. They should, however, show understanding of Mum’s character and the predicament and could say, for example, that:

- Cosmo obviously does not want his mum there because he thinks she will embarrass him, and he has lied to Lucinda (the object of his affections) in saying his mum will be brilliant on stage.
- Mum does respond to emergencies.
- if he were to be ill she may ask a friend to look after him and still go to the show.

p.63: **Explain how the themes in this book appeal to children. Use evidence from the text in your answer.**

The book is written in a very humorous way and might appeal to children for many reasons, such as:

- the humour in the way it is written;
- the funny characters and things they do;
- the reader’s empathy with Cosmo’s embarrassment;
- the reader’s wish for a happy ending in which Lucinda likes Cosmo the book’s diary format, which is easy to read and sounds ‘real’.
**The Queen’s Spy**

p.12: How do you think Edward is feeling at this point in the story? Give clear reasons based on the events in the text.
The story begins when a scruffy man (later revealed to be Nat Cobbley) grabs Edward. At first Edward is scared, but is then excited and feels important. Evidence for this could include, for example, that:
- Nat says he is a helper of Sir Robert Cecil
- he says Edward is needed to help
- he says knows Queen Elizabeth
- the text says that Edward’s ‘heart [is] beating fast with excitement’

p.63: Do you believe that Nat Cobbley is really a spy for Sir Robert Cecil? Support your answer with evidence from the text.
Either answer is acceptable. Evidence for Nat Cobbley being a spy could include:
- He did catch out Master Thatcham, who turned out to be a very violent man.
- He saved Edward’s life.
- He exhibits unexpected grace in bowing and nobility of stance.
- He seems to be used to meat and pie with meals, so he could be used to court life.
Evidence against it could include:
- He looks like a vagrant.
- He just seems to want food and shelter.
- He is reluctant to do much, and only breaks into Master Thatcham’s house when threatened with the constable.
- When Bridget wakes him, he shouts ‘No, no! It wasn’t me, your worship!’,” as though he was remembering being in front of a judge in court.

**Doctor Who: The Eleventh Hour**

p.9: We don’t hear Amelia’s response to the Doctor’s question because the chapter ends. Refer back to the book and write what you think she might have said.
The Doctor’s question mentioned is:
“I’m not afraid of anything,” Amelia told him.
“Not even the crack in your bedroom wall?” he asked.’
Young Amelia is afraid of a huge crack in her bedroom wall – she says so explicitly on the previous page. Amelia also thinks she should tell the police about the crack, but hasn’t yet called when the Tardis appears. In response to the Doctor’s question (rather than simply replying ‘yes’) she could ask, for example:

- How did you know about the crack in the wall? You just appeared and I didn’t tell you!
- Are you a policeman? I didn’t actually ring one yet.

p.53: **What does the author want us to think about the Doctor at this point? Use evidence from the text to add detail to your answer.**

As in all Doctor Who stories, the Doctor comes up with answers to all the problems that face him. At this point in the story, the author wants us to think, for example, that:

- the Doctor is very clever, for thinking of a solution to the problem;
- he is very determined and serious about the job in hand;
- he is also fun;
- he is confident and happy that he is right as he smiles, speaks happily and is pleased when zero shows on the clock.

---

**Petronas**

p.27: **If you were one of the elders, would you settle in the city, take water from the city but stay in the desert, or find out more about the city before moving to it?**

The story begins with a group of nomads looking for somewhere to live. Baba (their girl leader) discovers a strange deserted town, which has an easy but mysterious supply of much-needed water.

No answer is wrong, and water and shelter are very hard to find in the desert for the nomads. However, the elders would perhaps be most likely to find out more about the city before moving into it, because, for example:

- it is deserted and they do not know why.
- Ki said he felt he was being watched.
- he wondered why anyone would willingly leave.
- Baba’s uncle said there was something about it he didn’t like.
- Tulsi wondered if it was magic.
p.52: **What does the phrase ‘the old ways still persisted’ mean? Develop your answer using specific examples from the text.**
In the desert, before anyone spoke to Baba it was the customary to cough outside her tent. Now that she is in a house, this still happens as Ming coughs before entering.

p.92: **If you were living in Petronas, would you choose to stay or leave? Explain your answer in as much detail as you can, using evidence from the text to help you.**
At this point, the nomadic people have a dilemma, and some cannot decide whether to stay or go. Either choice with supported reasons is acceptable.
**Reasons to stay include:**
- There is water, shelter and food in Petronas, for which the people have searched for a long time.
**Reasons to go include:**
- There are strange, unexplained things happening in the eastern part of the city, which seems to draw people to it, perhaps by means of a yellow-eyed bird.
- Something is making people fall into a hypnotic sleep.
- Some members of the group have felt so worried that they have already left Petronas to go back to the desert, so others may want to accompany them.

---

**The Catapult Kid: The Greatest Show on Earth**

p.36: **Would you like to be Annie Oakley?**
Siblings Tess and Jim live in the Wild West, and Jim is excited by the arrival of ‘The Greatest Show on Earth’, featuring the ‘best catapult shooter in the West’, Annie Oakley. She is an expert rider and shooter, and tours the country with the show.
Children’s answers will be based on their own opinions but should be backed up with clear reasons for their choice from the text.
**Answers selecting ‘Yes’ could argue, for example:**
- It would be fun to ride a horse really well.
- It would be fun to fire a catapult accurately with a crowd watching.
- It would be great to have people applaud me and be a celebrity.
- It would be fun to tour the country.
- It would be fun to live the life of a cowboy.
**Answers selecting ‘No’ could argue, for example:**
- It would be hard to keep moving around with no home.
- I would not want to fire a catapult.
- I do not like riding horses.
p.45: **What do you think is going to happen to Jim?**
Jim has volunteered to demonstrate his own riding and catapult shooting skills in front of the huge crowd at ‘The Greatest Show on Earth’. During his practice for the event, he has not hit any of the targets and has been unable to manage his mule. Tess has tried to convince him just to watch the show, but it is too late!
Optimism should of course be appreciated, but answers will most likely conclude that Jim is going to:
- miss all of the targets;
- be booed by the crowd, like the man before him;
- not manage to keep his mule under control.
This is in fact what happens, but Jim’s chaotic showing is nevertheless applauded by the crowd. Answers could anticipate this, based on the title of the book and knowledge of other stories where the main character ends up a hero.

**Howzat!**

p.46: **Do you like the character of Sohail?**

Jamie and his parents have moved from England to Lahore in Pakistan, and Jamie is trying to make friends. He meets Sohail in the first story, when he plays cricket and Sohail injures him. As his new friend Ali tells him, ‘Sohail is a bully.’
The likely answer is ‘No’, but either response should be acceptable as long as it is backed up with evidence.

Answers selecting ‘Yes’ could argue:
- Sohail is an interesting character, and provides the necessary opposition for Jamie in the story.
- He is a keen and competitive sportsman.

Answers selecting ‘No’ could argue:
- Sohail has not helped Jamie to settle in.
- He injured Jamie with a vicious bowl of the cricket ball in the previous story.
- Ali flinches when Sohail is near, as he thinks that Sohail is going to hurt him or damage his belongings, based on previous behaviour.
- Sohail is challenging and confrontational
- He seems to challenge and confront only boys who are smaller than him.
**Robert Louis Stevenson's Treasure Island**

p.61: **Do you think the men in the stockade should trust Long John Silver to keep his word?**

Jim the cabin boy trusted the ship’s cook, Long John Silver, until it emerged that he was inciting a mutiny against the captain and Jim’s benefactor, Dr Livingstone. The mutiny came to a head when the ship reached ‘treasure island’, and Jim, the captain and the doctor have taken refuge in a colonial stockade with the few loyal ship-hands. Silver has approached and offered a deal: that if they hand over the treasure map he will see them safely back to England. The captain has refused the deal, saying that he will see the mutineers safely back to England, if they surrender.

Optimism should be appreciated, but the only really sensible answer is ‘No’, because:

- Silver is pirate and an outlaw, so not reputed for living by a code.
- He has broken his word before.
- He has proved that he and the mutineers are capable of violence.
- Once Silver has the map, Jim, the captain and the doctor will be of no use to him.

p.87: **Jim is now giving Long John Silver some options. What does this tell us about how things have changed since the start of the story?**

Answers should include the following as to what has changed from the start of the story.

- Jim has grown a lot bolder, less innocent and more tactical than he was.
- Jim has learned from Captain Smollett’s treatment of Long John Silver that it is sometimes best to fight strength with strength, rather than surrendering.
- The situation is reversed now – Silver and the rest of the pirates have lost their advantage of number and strength: there are only six of them left.

**Jess and Layla’s Astronomical Assignment**

p.19: **Look at the information on pages 16 to 18, and the image on page 19. In your own words, describe what features are most like those found in non-fiction books.**

The text on pages 16 to 18 is narrative text, and features a conversation between Jess and Layla. However, it contains the following precise facts about the stars, stated by Jess.

- ‘[W]e’re really looking at the past when we look up at the stars’.
- ‘Stars are millions of light years away from Earth’.
• ‘Some of the stars we’re observing now don’t even exist any more because they exploded a million years ago, and we’re only just seeing the light.’
• Light travels at ‘[a]bout 186,000 miles per second’.
• There are 31,536,000 seconds in a year.
• ‘A meteor or shooting star is the bright flash you see when a meteoroid burns through the atmosphere.’
• ‘A meteoroid is a piece of rock that has broken off a comet or an asteroid as it flies through space’.
• ‘[W]hen a meteoroid hits Earth, then it’s a meteorite.’

The image on page 19 is a labelled diagram which clarifies the facts by showing a ‘Meteoroid’ in space, a ‘Meteor’ flashing as a meteoroid flies through Earth’s atmosphere, and a ‘Meteorite’ on Earth’s surface.

p.23: Based on what has been said and done so far, what do you think might happen when the girls get in the van? Give reasons from the text for your answer.

Answers will necessarily be speculative, but should be justified. The relevant events so far have been the following.

• In Science at school that day, Jess and Layla were taught about the history of astronomy, and the theories of Thales (who thought Earth was flat), Anaximander (who thought Earth was cylindrical), Pythagoras (who thought crystal spheres surrounded Earth), Aristotle (who discovered Earth was spherical but believed the Sun moved around it), and Aristarchus, Copernicus and Galileo (who correctly believed that the spherical Earth moved around the Sun).
• At the end of the lesson, their teacher says, ‘I want you to imagine what would happen if all the astronomers we have talked about today got together for a dinner party. What would they argue about? Would they make friends with each other? And would they learn anything new? What do you think they would say if you told them what we know now about their theories?’

• During the girls’ conversation about the stars (see above), Layla says, ‘I wish we really could go back in time […] I would find all those old astronomers and show them everything we know about the solar system today – they’d be astounded!’
• A meteor crosses the sky and Jess says, ‘You just wished on a meteor’.

© Pearson Education 2018
• In a hail of ‘shining golden rain’, a meteor then hits Layla’s dad’s old van. This causes it to glow ‘like an ember’ and smoke gently. The girls see that ‘lights were sparkling up and down the van’s rusty red bonnet’ and then the van’s door swings open on its own.
• Layla says, ‘I think the van wants us to get in. [...] I think something weird is going on.’ Answers could therefore correctly conclude that Layla’s wish on a meteor has come true, and turned the van into a time machine. They could furthermore infer that the time machine will allow them to meet the astronomers they have studied, and to answer their teacher’s questions using first-hand experience.

p.38: **Do you think Galileo and Pythagoras will enjoy talking to each other? Select one option and explain your answer.**
Answers will be subjective as the question asks for an opinion, but should be justified and take into account the following details.
• Galileo correctly believed that the spherical Earth moved around the Sun, and was imprisoned for refusing to change his assertion that Earth was not the centre of the universe.
• Layla comments that he has no imagination.
• He was honoured to meet Copernicus (with whose theories he agreed).
• Pythagoras thought crystal spheres surrounded Earth.
• Galileo calls Pythagoras’s model ‘utter balderdash’.
• He and Copernicus say, “‘We don’t like him, [...] [w]e don’t want him, and he’s not coming on our journey.’”
Well-supported answers are therefore unlikely to conclude that Galileo and Pythagoras will enjoy one another’s company.

**How Do They Make Wallace & Gromit?**

p.11: **Would you like to be a storyboarder?**
Answers will be based on the children’s own opinions but should be backed up with clear reasons for their choice from the text. For instance: Answers selecting ‘Yes’ could argue, for example:
• I like drawing.
• I would enjoy breaking the scene down into smaller parts.
• It would be good to work closely with the director.
• I am good at using computers for drawing.
Answers selecting ‘No’ could argue, for example:
• I am not good at drawing.
• I do not like using computers for drawing.
• I would find it hard to break the scene down into smaller parts.
• I would prefer to be a … because ….
Which animation job would you most like to do and why?

Use information from the text to give more detail to your answer. Answers will be based on the children’s own opinions but should be backed up with clear reasons for their choice from the text, referring to the information given about each job. For instance:

Scriptwriter:
- Writes the script,
- Adds humour to a story,
- Meets with other members of the team.

Storyboarder:
- Draws each scene,
- Works closely with the director and scriptwriter,
- Uses computers for drawing.

Model maker:
- Makes each model for the animation,
- Makes humorous models,
- Has a huge variety of models to make.

Set designer:
- Designs and draws the sets for the animation,
- Thinks about how practical the sets are for the film,
- Uses a computer for the detailed drawing.

Set dresser:
- Makes the sets look realistic,
- Designs all of the extra parts to make the sets exiting and real,
- Has to imagine that you can shrink and be in the set!

Prop maker:
- Makes things small and yet realistic,
- Has a huge variety of things to make.

Director:
- Is in charge of everything in the animation,
- Has to check camera angles, lighting and timing of shots,
- Works with lots of different people.

Animator:
- Makes up new characters,
- Thinks up storylines,
- Moves the models during filming,
- Has to take great care when working,
- Is responsible for the way that a model speaks and shows emotion.

Voice actor:
- Puts on funny voices,
- Gets inside the heads of characters.

Editor:
- Cuts the scenes to make the film run smoothly
- Adds all the other elements together and perfects the final version.
How to be a Detective

p.6: Why do you think detectives have to follow these top tips? Use evidence from the text and your own knowledge to help you.

The top tips are:
- to photograph a crime scene from every angle
- not to contaminate it
- to divide it up into square metres for examination.

These need to be followed because, for example:
- information has to be gathered carefully and thoroughly
- contamination can provide misleading evidence
- once a scene is spoiled in any way, vital evidence is lost.

p.17: Think about your own writing and the two views on handwriting analysis. Which one do you agree with?

View 1: Handwriting analysis is rubbish
Reasons may include:
- I can change my handwriting and probably would if I knew I was under pressure.

View 2: Handwriting analysis works
Reasons may include:
- a real handwriting expert would be very skilful
- an expert would be able to tell how I am feeling however I try to change my handwriting.

p.30: Answer the quiz questions in the book and work out your score. Click on your result and then explain why you would or would not like to become a detective.
This question needs sensible answers regarding whether a child feels he or she would like to be a detective, giving reasons for the decision.

What Makes a Roller Coaster Roll?

p.19: Why do you think the author has chosen to lay out the text here in this way?
The text describing the process of the ride is laid out on numbered, arrowed post-it notes, which could be for any of following reasons:
- The post-its give information in short points so it is clear to read.
- The arrows show what happens at each part of the ride.
- The numbers engage readers by making them feel involved in the process of the ride, in the right order.
- The bold titles on the post-its engage the reader with the ‘thrill’ of the ride.

© Pearson Education 2018
Rainforests at Risk

p.11: **Why might Globe not have an internet connection for a few days?** Write a paragraph to explain, giving details from the text as well as using your own knowledge.

Globe is going into the Amazonian rainforest, where there would be little internet connection because, for example, of:

- its small population,
- its lack of visitors,
- its vast area and therefore distance from mobile carrier masts,
- signal obstruction by the number of trees,
- the poverty or traditions of indigenous people, and so low priority of modern devices.

Technology

p.15: **Why do you think wave farm generators are called ‘sea snake’ generators?** Use information from the page in your answer.

The wave farm generators are called ‘sea snakes’ because:

- they are long cylindrical shapes like snakes.
- they are jointed and can bend in the direction of the waves.
Red B Book Band

The Time- Travelling Cat and the Tudor Treasure

p.22: Topher recognises lots of the people that he meets. Why do you think this is? Use evidence from the text to explain your answer. Topher will recognise names of historical figures, and events such as the English discovery of the ‘New World’ and the introduction of tobacco, because:
- he has been studying the Tudors at school.
- when Ka types ‘Richmount’ into the computer, Topher does further internet research.

p.30: Do you think Topher’s father practises sorcery? Refer to the text to explain how the author has led you to your conclusion. At this point in the story it is unclear whether Topher’s father is practising sorcery, and either answer is acceptable. Evidence to suggest he is not could include:
- he is trusted by the queen, and the text explains that those who are jealous of his relationship with her accuse him of witchcraft.

However, he could be because:
- in his private rooms, Topher finds books of spells and magic potions.
- he does some strange things, such as disappearing after reading a leaflet at the play.
- the text says that witches kept cats or turned themselves into cats, and they do have a cat.

Cosmo B. Henderson: Could Do Better

p.16: Explain what the author wants us to think about Lucinda or Cosmo and how this has been achieved. Lucinda is portrayed as good at everything, particularly performing. She is active in class and does everything right - but knows it. She also finds Cosmo odd. Evidence for these observations could include:
- Her school report is glowing, saying she has a ‘promising future on the stage’.
- She is always first to volunteer and answer in class.
- She laminates her report to show everyone.
- She often calls Cosmo ‘an utter freak’.

© Pearson Education 2018
The author may want readers to find Cosmo funny, odd, and / or to feel sorry for him, because things often go wrong for him:
- He makes amazing, inventive excuses, e.g. having ‘fake swine flu’ and the dog eating his report.
- He does weird things e.g. putting purple felt pen spots on his face to fake his illness, and coming to the school dance in his pyjamas.
- He has an embarrassing little sister who dresses up in boxes.
- He really likes Lucinda and is worried his mum might embarrass him in front of her.

p.29: Why do you think Cosmo’s mum is humming the theme tune to the film ‘Romeo and Juliet’ after visiting Mr Phelps? Click on a sentence and type why you think this in the space provided.

The sentences in question are:
- Mum and Mr Phelps watched the film together.
- Mum is in love with Mr Phelps.
- Mum just heard the song on the radio.

At this point, Mum has been called to school to discuss Cosmo’s work – and usually she causes a scene. Although children may express disbelief that grown-ups can fall in love, or that either character could find the other attractive, the author is clearly implying that Mum is in love with Mr Phelps (there is no evidence whatsoever that the film or the radio was on).

Evidence could be that, for example:
- Cosmo acknowledges that Romeo and Juliet is a ‘romantic film’. The theme is obviously a romantic song.
- Cosmo thought Mum would stage a protest when summoned to the head and embarrass him, but she didn’t. She seems happy, despite being told that Cosmo is not performing brilliantly at school.
- Cosmo believes ‘something TOTALLY ODD has happened’.

p.64: How has the writer linked the ending back to the beginning of the book? Click on a sentence, then explain whether you think this is effective and why.

The sentences in question are:
- Cosmo has commented on and edited his New Year’s resolution list.
- Cosmo has commented on what Lucinda’s mum thinks about Mr Phelps.

Just as he did at the beginning of the book, Cosmo has commented on and edited his resolution list. (Cosmo did not comment on what Lucinda’s mum thinks about Mr Phelps at the beginning of the book.)

This draws a direct comparison between what he wanted then, and what he feels at the end of the book, and is powerful because it emphasises the changes both around and within Cosmo.

© Pearson Education 2018
Differences include:

- He omits the resolution, ‘Try not to be the class WEIRDO this term’, as he has realised it is not so bad being odd, because Lucinda is too (he says, ‘the thing is, it’s not so bad being the class freak when there’s two of you’).
- He adds the resolution, ‘Get Lucinda to get her dad to do something about his nose hair.’ Although this means he is still embarrassed by elements of his family, this resolution shows that Cosmo has accepted Mr Phelps as a part of his life.

Other resolutions have not been explicitly changed, but the reader is prompted to recall them and realize that:

- Cosmo has also found solace for his embarrassment over his family (expressed in Resolution 1) because Lucinda shares it: she was embarrassed by her father’s trousers and nose hair.
- Cosmo’s mum has finally found a boyfriend to ‘distract her’, as Cosmo wishes in Resolution 3.
- Cosmo has managed to stop telling lies (Resolution 5), telling Lucinda ‘we had to tell the truth.’
- Fulfilling Resolution 6, Cosmo realizes, ‘now Lucinda and I will have to be friends.’

The Velvet Thief

p.16: **What is odd about the words ‘brace of quails’ being in bold? Think about other types of test that have words in bold like this, and answer as fully as you can.**

It may seem odd that these words are in bold as this is a fiction text, and in fiction bold is usually used for emphasis. It would be odd for ‘brace of quails’ to be emphasised in this passage.

In non-fiction texts, however, words are set in bold when they are words to be found in a glossary, because they may be unknown, or be words a reader would want to know more about.

As this is a historical book, the reader should recognize that bold may be used in the same way as in non-fiction, to denote a term that is uncommon nowadays. The reader may infer that there is a glossary in this book (which there is).

p.54: **How does the simile ‘like an eel’ add to the reader’s understanding of the events? Make your answer as detailed as possible and remember to refer to the text.**

Pettit is a good-looking charmer who is a clever thief and gambler. At this point he has been caught out, so the answer should show an understanding that, for example:
• an eel is slippery and quick and Pettit can dodge quickly out of Nat’s way.
• In a more abstract way, Pettit is a character who has tricked and charmed people so his character could also be described as ‘slippery’ because up until this point he has got away with everything.

**The Dangerous World of Joe McGinty**

p.40: **The structure of this story is a circle. Do you agree with this statement? Refer back to the book to explain your answer.**

When the story begins, Joe is at school and everything is normal, but then he is hired by the government as spy. Every Thursday he becomes Lizard Seven: a special agent who has adventures. Answers may agree or disagree. Because Joe must return to school and normality every Friday, we know every adventure will end (for him) as it has begun. In this way it is like a circle. Responses could mention repetitions such as:

- the head teacher’s anger about Joe leaving every Thursday.
- Joe’s cellpad’s reminder about Thursdays, which glows red and counts down his ordinary school days.

Of course, every adventure will also be different for Joe, and he learns about his new job progressively. In this way, the narrative progresses rather than circulates.

**Dr Who: The Time of Angels**

p.6: **How has the author shown that this is not the first time that the Doctor has met River Song? Use quotes from the Prologue to help explain your answer.**

It is clear that the Doctor has met River Song before because:

- he knew River Song’s name (‘“River Song!” cried the Doctor in surprise.’)
- when he sees her, he is surprised (as above), and ‘delighted and worried at the same time’.
- River Song greets the Doctor familiarly, saying ‘Hello, sweetie’, and telling him what to do straight away (‘“Follow that spaceship!” she ordered’).
p.33: **How do the pictures help the reader to understand this part of the story in more detail? Use specific details in your answer to help you explain.**

- The picture on p.32 looks down from a substantial height to the angels, who are standing in the cavern. It shows the great height at which the protagonists are suspended upside down by the ship Byzantium’s artificial gravity.
- We see that the angels below are reaching up to them; their hands look as if they are drawing power from the ship.
- Seeing this distance illustrates how quickly the angels must move to reach the protagonists once they are out of sight.
- On p.33, the image shows Amy looking down what seems to her to be a large, vertical shaft below her. However, the Doctor (who has descended into the shaft) is standing upright on its side, as though it is a horizontal corridor. This illustrates the complex illusions and possibilities created by the ship’s artificial gravity. As the text says, the Doctor is ‘effectively walking up the inside of a tube’.
- The Doctor looks happy despite the fact that, as he says, the artificial gravity could fail, which illustrates his confidence and excitement about the adventure.

**The Time-Travelling Cat and the Egyptian Goddess**

p.21: **How do you think that Topher could rescue Ka from being sacrificed? Explain your idea in detail.**

At this point in the text Topher realises that Ka (the family cat) may be sacrificed, which his mother says would be the will of the gods. We know that, if this were the case, Ka would be taken to the Temple of Bubastis, have her neck broken, be mummified and given a cloth of gold, but know nothing else about the ritual that may help Topher with a rescue plan. Answers could be almost anything, but could include that:

- Topher could perhaps plead with his parents, who we know hold influential positions (his mother is ‘an important lady’ and his father is a ‘high-ranking scribe for the Pharaoh’).
- Topher could, possibly, try to ask Horus the falcon, who carried him through time, for help.
p.59: **Which of the doors would you choose and why? Explain your answer in detail.**

At this point, Topher is trapped in a dark passage with Ka and is faced with the dilemma of which door to choose: one marked ‘Past’, one marked ‘Present’ and one marked ‘Future’. Any door could be chosen, with justifications. For the **past**, these could include:

- To find Ka before she went missing
- To go on another adventure in a different period of time

For the **present**, reasons could include:

- To hope that this door is an escape route
- To stay with his Egyptian family, as his parents are together, happy and successful – in modern reality, Topher’s mother is dead and his father is dating again

For the **future**, reasons could include:

- To return to his real father (and his friends)
- To return to his modern-day life, with all its conveniences
- To return Ka to a time period that doesn’t sacrifice cats

---

**Hot Money**

p.78: **What do you think is the moral message of this story so far? Explain your answer as fully as you can using references to the text.**

The moral of the story so far is that ‘honesty is the best policy’ (or something similar). Miles has not taken the stolen money he found to the police, as he knows his family really needs money. However, he has come to realize that this was a bad idea because, for example:

- his best friend has insisted he ought to hand it in;
- his father and grandmother would be angry if they found out, so he could never use the money to help them;
- he knows he is letting his family and best friend down by hanging on to it;
- he knows an old man saw him pick it up;
- he knows that the longer he keeps it the worse it is;
- he knows that the police are now looking for him;
- he cannot eat because he is so worried that he has the money.
p.128: **There are several things this story could teach us: ‘always do the right thing’, ‘a friend in need is a real friend’, ‘a quiet life is better than one full of risk’. Which to you think is the moral of the story? Explain your answer in as much detail as you can.**

Any option would be acceptable, and valid supported reasons could include:

If ‘always do the right thing’ is selected:
- The points in the question above could be given (doing the wrong thing causes problems);
- August, his friend, convinced Miles he should do the right thing in the end;
- Miles put his family in a lot of danger;
- the policeman made Miles tell his family and things were so much better when out in the open.

If ‘a friend in need is a real friend’ is selected:
- August said friends have to stick together and, although he didn’t agree with Miles, he did not turn his friend in;
- the boys planned together how they would give the money back;
- Miles said that worries were easier when August was around;
- August waited for Miles at the police station as he knew how hard it was to confess;
- the policeman in a way was a friend who helped Miles by being firm but not too strict and finding him a job with the old man, which in turn helped with family finance.

If ‘a quiet life is better than one full of risk’ is selected:
- Having the money caused all the above problems and once the robber found Miles had the money, life could have been dangerous for him, his family and his friends.

**The Catapult Kid: Outlaws on the Loose**

p.15: **Do you think Tess should have lied to her brother?**

At this point in the story the children have learned that there are outlaws on the loose. Jim has made up his mind to go and catch them on his own, using his catapult and mule. Based on his previous achievements, Tess knows that he will not be successful. She sets out to do whatever she can to stop him, starting with pretending to be poorly so that Jim is kept busy doing her chores.
Answers will be based on children’s own opinions, but reasons must be backed up with evidence from the text.

Answers selecting ‘Yes’ could argue, for example:

- Tess did not want Jim to go after the gang as she knew he would get hurt.
- She only told a small lie and it was for his own good.

Answers selecting ‘Yes’ could argue, for example:

- You should never tell a lie.

p.37: Using your knowledge of other stories in this genre, and of the events in this story so far, what do you think is going to happen next?

At this point in the story Jim has gone after the gang and Tess has followed him (in disguise) to make sure that he is okay, and to help him if needed. She has tricked Jim into thinking she is one of the outlaws, so he is following her. Tess has decided that she needs to stop so that Jim will stop too, as he is looking tired. She heads for ‘what looks like’ a deserted shack. The image shows light coming from windows in the shack.

Answers could (correctly) conclude that:

- The gang will be in the deserted shack (children’s clue is in the words, ‘what looked like a deserted shack’).
- The gang will chase the children (in other stories of this genre, the baddies often start by having the upper hand and looking like they will win).
- The children will manage to defeat the gang at the end (stories in this genre always end with the good people winning against the bad!).

Wild Papa Woods

p.31: Using what you know about Papa Bois so far, do you think he could be scaring the hunters? Include evidence from the text in your answer.

Liani and Cyril are staying with their conservationist Uncle Ochossi in his forest house. They have heard the legend of Papa Bois, a woodland protector, and wonder if they have witnessed him at work when two hunters are scared out of the forest:

- The children wonder why the stag the hunters are chasing is running so slowly. Liani says, ‘It’s strange ... It’s almost teasing them.’
- When the hunters emerge, they act oddly: ‘The short one flapped at the air, his eyes wide with terror. “Show yourself!” he cried. Then suddenly, he lurched away, with the tall one following.’

Answers will be children’s own opinions, but we know the following about Papa Bois.
• He ‘knows every thorn and every root. He knows each of the birds by name and every single butterfly by the flutter of its wings against his face.’
• ‘For thousands of years, he has walked these lands, protecting nature.’
• He’s ‘stronger than Superman, with hooves to chase his enemies.’
• ‘Sometimes, they say, he changes shape, becoming part of the forest itself.’

p.32: **This story began with a summary. Do you think this summary was useful?**
The summary at the beginning of the second story tells readers the following information about the first.
• Who the children are and why their Mum is taking them to Kenya.
• Who Uncle Ochossi is and what the locals think of him.
• What the children did last summer.
This helps set the scene and provides background information, so that readers understand the relationships between the people in the second story if they haven’t read the first. Children may argue, however, that this wasn’t useful as they had read the first story.

**William Shakespeare’s King Lear**

p.16: **Did you expect the King of France to propose to Cordelia?**

Cordelia is King Lear’s youngest and (at first) favourite daughter. She is destined to marry the Duke of Burgundy or the King of France.

However, her father disowns her when she won’t pander to his vanity and no longer offers a dowry. The Duke of Burgundy says that he is too poor to marry her without the dowry, before the King of France proposes. Children could argue either, but answers must be backed up with evidence from the text.

Answers selecting ‘No’ could argue:
• King Lear was no longer offering a dowry so there was no money in it for him.
• Cordelia was out of favour with her father, so France could not hope to keep the King’s friendship if he proposed.

Answers selecting ‘Yes’ could argue:
• We know that Cordelia is beautiful.
• She has shown herself to be brave and have integrity by standing up to her father’s unreasonable demands.
• France is a whole country, unlike Burgundy, so its king may well have more money and not mind about not having a dowry.
p.43: “When a wheel starts to roll downhill,” the Fool replied, “a wise man doesn’t run after it. He might trip and break his neck.”
What does the Fool mean by this?
At this point in the story, King Lear has lost his power and his servants have started to desert him.
Children should explain the Fool’s words in terms of the story, rather than a generic understanding of what is said. Answers should interpret that the ‘wheel’ is King Lear, who has started to ‘roll downhill’ (lose his power and go mad), and that wise men have not gone with him but have moved away whilst they still could. The Duke of Kent explains the Fool’s words in the following lines when he thinks, ‘So they’ve seen that Lear is losing his power and decided to desert him’.

p.106: **Who do you think the masked stranger is? Why?**
The stranger arrives to confront the plotters Edmund, Goneril and Regan, who have torn King Lear’s power from him. Children should be able to conclude that he is therefore on the side of the King, which narrows their options considerably. Lear and Cordelia are in prison, and Gloucester is dead. The masked man could therefore be:

- Kent, Lear’s old friend – although he has recently said, ‘There was no need for disguise any more, and it felt good to be himself again.’
- The Fool – although he is unlikely to emerge as a hero.
- Edmund’s older brother, Edgar, about whom Edmund had lied, forcing him to go into hiding until he found his father dying.

The correct inference would be that Edgar has finally arrived to challenge his brother, after their father’s death. A hint that this is the case is that Edgar is designated by a picture of a mask on the character page.

---

**In Their Shoes: My Life as a Victorian Maid**

p.29: **Would you like to have been a Victorian maid?**
Answers will be based on the children’s own opinions but should be backed up with clear reasons from the text.
Answers selecting ‘No’ may argue, for example:

- I wouldn’t want to be a servant.
- I wouldn’t want to get up at 5am.
- I wouldn’t want to sleep in the attic.
  - I’d miss my toys and books.
  - I’d miss having spare time.
- I wouldn’t want to be cold.
- I’d miss having electricity.
- I wouldn’t want to wear the uniform.
  - I’d miss having a bathroom.
  - I’d miss my family.
  - I wouldn’t enjoy emptying chamber pots!
Answers selecting ‘Yes’ may argue, for example:
- If I was from a poor family it would give me a grand house to live in and food to eat.
- I would hate to do other Victorian children’s jobs, e.g. factory worker, chimney sweep or miner.
- I like getting up early.
- It would be fun to sleep in the attic.
- I would not miss my toys and books as I would not have spare time.
- I would get to know all sorts of secrets about the family for which I worked!

**Dead Adventurous: Trailblazing Voyages from History**

P.17: **In the debrief, what is the author’s opinion of the native people? Find words and phrases in the text to help you explain your answer.**

References to the native people in the debrief are:
- Regarding the gold the expedition found, the natives ‘seem to hold it of little value’.
- ‘They are docile people: wearing few clothes, owning few weapons, eager to please and quick to obey any instructions given to them in sign language’.
- ‘Some are so uncivilised that they practise cannibalism’.
- ‘[O]nce trained, they should make excellent servants.’
- ‘I believe they will be easy to convert to our own true faith.’
- ‘They are indeed so childlike, there seems no reason why your majesties should not seize their lands and rule over them.’

**Reptiles**

p.20: **In what ways is this book similar to other non-fiction texts you have read? Explain your answer with reference to the features in the text.**

Depending on ability, you should expect a child at this level to be able to name at least four similarities to other non-fiction texts. Similarities could include:
- clear, colourful labelled photographs
- information under headings and subheadings
- catchy word play for headings and subheadings
  - clear fact boxes and fact files with bullet points
  - statistics
    - words to be found in glossary in bold
    - contents, index and glossary
Real Life Superheroes

p.11: Look at the fact file about Thomas Barnardo. Why do you think the author has chosen to lay out the information like this?
Children could mention any of the following:
- The information on this page is laid out under the heading ‘fact file’ in bullet points such as ‘Interests:’, ‘Worked as:’ and ‘Famous for:’.
- It appears to be hand-written on a piece of paper, in a folder and accompanied with a ‘paperclipped’ photograph of Barnardo and a timeline card for his biography.
- This lay-out makes the information clear, easy and fun to read.
- It makes the book look like a folder with different sections.
- It makes dry, complicated facts visually accessible to the reader.

p.31: Which real-life superhero have you found most inspiring and why? Use the text to help support your answer.
Any of the heroes in the book could be chosen, as all showed courage and sacrifice. Answers should be developed about one of the following:
- Rosa Parks, who fought for the rights of black people in 20th century USA;
- Raoul Wallenberg, who rescued thousands of Jews in WW2;
- Thomas Barnardo, who made homes for thousands of orphans in Victorian times;
- Richard Martin, who campaigned against cruelty to animals in the early 1800s.

101 Things to do Before Secondary School

p.5: Which of the tips in this section would you most like to do? Give three reasons.
This section shows things to do in Year 6 to remember the last year at primary school, so any of the options (with three good reasons) is acceptable.
The tips on this page mostly advise on how to make a good yearbook. They are:
- Write about school trips, important events and funny stories.
- Ask friends to answer funny questions in your book.
- Take photos of your friends and ask them to write something about you.
- Include reports about school clubs and sports days.
The page also suggests:

- Design and make an autograph book.
- Persuade everyone to sign your t-shirt.
- Fill a time capsule with things that relate to your last year at primary school.
- Choose a special song and record it with the whole class.
- Compose a class newsletter.
- Plant a class tree.
Red All Levels

Mobile Fear  * Title only available to subscribers of Pro Independent and Ultimate packages

p.28: **Do you like Rick, as a character? Select one answer and explain your reasons.**
Rick is the central character of the story, but he is not entirely sympathetic. The options given are ‘Yes’, ‘No’ and ‘I’m not sure’. Any answer should be acceptable as the question asks for an opinion, but responses must be justified and could draw on the following details about Rick.

- ‘Rick Walker was flash. He sported designer gear. He wore a silvery-blue ring on his middle finger. And he was gadget crazy.’
- Rick arrived at school with a brand new mobile phone called the Zed 5, and boasted about it.
- He let many of his friends play with the phone, but was also snappy and condescending when one suggested the phone hurt his ear.
- He mocked and teased a boy for talking about a programme that suggested the ‘new generation of mobiles’ could be dangerous.
- Rick’s best friend, Helen, seems fun, kind and reasonable.
- We learn via Rick’s father that Rick saved up hard for the phone.
- He puts off homework to spend more time on his phone, and then dreams about the phone too.
- Rick appears to have a fairly good relationship with his parents.
- When his phone starts behaving oddly, Rick at first attempts to deal with the problem himself.
- When things start to concern him, he tells Helen everything and listens genuinely to her advice.

Explorers: Triumphs and Troubles  * Title only available to subscribers of Pro Independent and Ultimate packages

p.15: **What do you think of the Spanish expeditions into the Americas? Select an answer and explain your reasons, referring to the text.**
The options given are ‘They were triumphs’ and ‘They were troubles’. Either answer should be acceptable as the question asks for an opinion, but responses should be well justified and refer closely to at least one fact drawn from the points in the text:
Spanish conquistadors, led by the bold Hernán Cortés, went to the Americas in 1503 not to become peaceful farmers but to find riches – and fight for them.

- They killed and enslaved many local people.
- Cortés headed for the Aztec capital to find his fortune.
- On the way, his army was almost defeated by the Tlaxcalans – but then they decided to join forces and form one powerful army.
- When the army reached the capital, the leader Montezuma hoped to get rid of Cortés with gifts of gold – but this only made him want more.
- Finally, Montezuma allowed the Spanish in and they took him prisoner.
- In 1520, Cortés left the city to fight elsewhere, and one of his army killed so many Aztec nobles that the Aztecs fought back. The conquistadors fled.
- They soon returned with more soldiers, and the city was finally captured for Spain in 1521.
- Many Aztec leaders were left in place, but they were controlled by the Spanish.
- It is also noted that the Aztecs themselves had formed their empire by attacking and conquering others.

**Dr Who: The Lodger**

p.7: **Craig describes the man upstairs as ‘just some bloke’. Use your knowledge of other stories to predict the importance this character may have in the rest of the story.**

The phrase ‘just some bloke’ suggests, on the surface, that the man is unimportant. However, when it is used in a story like this one this is often intentionally misleading.

The man has been mentioned twice already in the story, and the Doctor seems interested in him. This suggests that the character has an air of mystery and will probably become important.

Awareness of this, or any reference to other stories in which this happens (or in which the phrase is used genuinely dismissively) constitutes a good answer.

p.44: **What do you think Craig will give as his reason for wanting to stay? Refer back to the text to explain your answer.**

Throughout the story, Craig gives lots of reasons for wanting to stay:

- He ‘can’t see the point’ of London or Paris.
- He likes his sofa.
- He has a job.
- He has friends on the football team.
However, Craig also hints about his true feelings for Sophie (he starts to tell her something and is interrupted, and becomes jealous of her when the Doctor is around). On p. 6, Craig openly asks himself, ‘Why don’t I just come out and tell her? What’s so hard about saying... I love you!’ Children should recognize that this is his real reason for staying, but may express doubt regarding whether or not he will say this.

**Three Mistakes and a Monster**

**p.6: What do you think will happen if Prometheus’s idea becomes real?**
Prometheus has just suggested that Zeus invent some new creatures who are ‘weak’ and ‘easy to bully’, who ‘do what they are told and who won’t talk back.’
The correct inference is that Zeus will create humans, and that they won’t be as easy to manage as Prometheus suggests. Answers could also consider, however, that truly servile beings will be created, and may discuss the manner of life in Ancient Greek for servants.

**p.25: If you were Gawper, would you tell other people what you had seen?**
A Sphinx is terrorising Thebes, and will stay until its riddles are answered. Queen Jocasta has offered her hand in marriage to anyone who can do so.
Gawper has just watched the Sphinx kill Chancer because he did not get the riddle correct. Gawper says, ‘If I say what I saw here today, no one else will ever volunteer.’
The question asks for children’s own opinions, but answers must be backed up with evidence from the text. Answers selecting ‘No’ could argue, for example:
- If nobody else tries to answer its riddles, the Sphinx will remain a menace.
- If he told his tale, other people would know that he was too cowardly to try.
- Gawper’s name suggests he like watching others as they act.
Answers selecting ‘Yes’ could argue, for example:
- He would not want anyone else to be killed by the Sphinx.
- He might think they could come up with another way to get rid of the Sphinx.
**Find a Way Out!**

p.13: **Who do you think stole the paper?**
The options given are Ahmed, Lewis, Yasmin, Erin, Naomi and Myles. A test paper has gone missing from the classroom at break time and the culprit must be one of these children.
Answers will be the children’s own opinions, but must be backed up with the following evidence from the text about character, or about the children’s movements.

**Character:**
- Ahmed – He ‘likes to figure things out’ and is always tidying up other people’s messes.
- Lewis – He ‘doesn’t always play by the rules’. He generally gets the blame for everything because he has done things in the past, e.g. putting itching powder in the teacher’s shorts and glue on the handlebars of the caretaker’s bike.
- Yasmin – She ‘works hard and often comes top’. She says she doesn’t need to because she comes top in everything anyway. Always takes her break in the classroom because nobody talks to her.
- Erin and Naomi – They are ‘always together and up to something’. They’re known as the ‘terrible two’ for dropping litter and never doing their homework. They say they didn’t need to steal the paper because they never pass tests anyway.
- Myles – He ‘likes to make people laugh’. Myles wrote a joke on the whiteboard when he was in the classroom at break time.

**Movements:**
- Ahmed tidied the room.
- The classroom was tidy when Naomi and Erin were there, but still messy when Lewis was.
- Lewis came in to retrieve his phone, and he says then the paper was already gone.
- Yasmin saw that the test paper and phone were still in a draw when she entered.
- Myles wrote a joke on the whiteboard.
- Ahmed says there was no joke on the board when he came in.
- Mr Boyle came in while Naomi and Erin were in the room, and the joke was already on the board.

From this, it is possible to work out that the order of people in the room was
- Yasmin (who saw the phone and test paper)
- Lewis (who saw the messy room, collected the phone and said the paper was already gone)
Ahmed (who tidied up and saw no joke)
Myles (who wrote a joke)
Naomi, Erin and Mr Boyle (who saw the tidy room and the joke).

Assuming all the statements are true, only Yasmin could have taken the paper – although answers could suggest that the thief would lie.

p. 32: **What do you think Kamran thinks has happened?**
A group of children has got separated from their class and teacher. They have lost the map, seem to be going round in circles and have seen their teacher and the rest of the class but could not be seen by them. Kamran thinks ‘something funny’ is going on.

Answers will be children’s own opinions, but could note that Kamran has commented on people repeating their own words as well as their tendency to go around in circles. They could therefore infer that Kamran thinks that he has become part of a ghost or science-fiction story involving some kind of time loop, or that the forest is haunted.
Red Plus Book Band

Lost

p.38: **If you were Valdez, how would you be feeling at this point and what would you be hoping would happen next?**

As the question asks for an opinion, any answer should be acceptable. Answers should, however, consider at least some of the following details.

- Valdez is part of a biological team that was developing Eco, an Earth-cloned planet, for human inhabitation – until an unknown traitor spread a virus on the planet.
- Having partially overheard a conversation between his sister Sera and Umbro (both senior biologists), Valdez believes his sister may have been responsible for the virus.
- On an observation flight, the pod flown by Umbro and Valdez encountered a strange pulse of light that left Umbro unconscious ‘or worse’.
- Valdez received no reply to his distress calls.
- He crash-landed the pod into a landscape filled with rainforests, rocks, swamps, volcanic vents and strange flying creatures that pull hair and squirt an odd liquid.
- Valdez is dazed and bruised, but otherwise seems uninjured.
- Much of the pod has now sunk in the swamp, but Valdez can’t be certain where Umbro is.

p.156: **How does the ending on this story surprise you, as the reader? Do you think it is effective?**

Any of the following could be cited as surprising:

- Sera has arrived to rescue Valdez. (She has revealed the following.)
- It was Umbro who spread the virus on Eco.
- Umbro was not human, but a shape-shifting, anarchistic alien in a human suit.
- Umbro had stolen the virus antidote developed by Sera.
- However, Valdez has had a vial of the antidote all the time, in the handle of Umbro’s knife.

Whether or not these revelations are considered effective will be a matter of opinion, so any well-reasoned answer should be acceptable.
**Flight from Ledron**

p.68: **What is the effect of the paragraph where Amon imagines a community where ‘even the ill were cared for’ on you, the reader?**

Ledron is a fantasy city that has survived after climatic change and is run as a utilitarian police state. The city is drastically short of water. The paragraph in question is:

Amon rolled onto his back again and lay with his hands under his head, staring up at the ceiling. He tried to imagine a community where even the very ill were cared for, where people grew old and died when they were ready to die. A community where there was enough water, even for animals.

As the question asks for an opinion, any answer should be acceptable – but should consider the fact that Amon’s mother believes she has cancer and that, in Ledron, anyone with a serious or terminal illness is ‘retired’ and not seen again – as happened to Amon’s father just after Amon was born.

Answers could also include any of the following points.

- The reader feels concerned for Amon and his mother, and empathises with Amon’s dream.
- The reader understands Amon’s dilemma as he asks his mother not to go to the Medical Centre.
- The reader wonders if Amon and his mother will find a more charitable community (and, perhaps, whether the bird Amon has found and illegally kept is a clue to this).
- The reader may feel able to draw comparisons between Ledron and modern-day culture / healthcare facilities, or with real-life countries suffering from drought.

p.124: **Look back at the ends of the last few chapters. How does the author make you feel at the end of each chapter? How does she do it? Explain your answer in detail, using evidence from the text.**

Chapter 12 ends with Amon and his friend Hester discovering that the Leaders have been suppressing research into closed systems. Hester asks: ‘How much about Ledron don’t we know?’

Chapter 13 ends with Amon considering sailing away from Ledron on a sand yacht, but worrying about being caught.

Chapter 14 ends with Amon’s friend Marco winning a sand-yacht race, but being guided away, with the second-place winner, by the Leaders. Amon is suspicious.

Chapter 15 ends with Marco, installed in new accommodation, acting coolly towards Amon and speaking of some new ‘opportunities’ that have been offered to him.
All of the chapters end with questions, doubt and suspicion. Answers will be largely subjective, but could conclude that:

- The author uses questions in the text, and also encourages the reader to ask further questions, to draw the reader further into the story.
- The author retains a sense of mystery because, as more is revealed about Ledron, more mysteries also develop.
- Because of what the reader learns elsewhere about what could happen to Amon’s mother because of her illness, and also to both Amon and Hester because of secrets they are hiding, these chapters seem to be a race against time that delay Amon’s flight.

p.194: **Who do you think the ‘bird man’ is? Think about events that happened in Ledron in the past.**

Several characters in the book have mysteriously disappeared at one point or another, and could now be the ‘bird man’: Luther (a friend of Amon’s), any of the researchers who discovered too much about Ledron, or any of the sand-yachters who had declined to join the border patrol. The only ‘retired’ character who is discussed in any detail, however, is Amon’s father.

Hints about his identity include:

- Amon’s father vanished instantaneously, after no evident illness, and his body was never seen.
- The people of Oasis are familiar with Ledron and the process of ‘retirement’ because of his experiences.
- Amon is told that the ‘bird man’ was the only other person to have escaped from Ledron.
- The ‘bird man’ escaped thirteen years ago; Amon is fourteen, and his father was ‘retired’ when he was a baby.
- Amon is also told that the ‘bird man’ escaped from Ledron on a sand yacht he had built himself; Amon’s father was an engineer of sand yachts.
- Readers may infer that Amon begins to suspect the ‘bird man’ is his father when they are told, ‘Something stirred at the back of Amon’s mind – the strangest idea. But it was impossible …’

**Inside the Game**

p.22: **What do you think has happened to Chris and how might it have happened? Think carefully about what you know about the room and what Amy has seen.**

Chris (a computer ‘addict’), is at his aunt’s house and, with his cousin Amy, has been allowed to explore his deceased Uncle Reg’s technology collection.
While playing an old computer game called ‘Seven Missions’, Chris suddenly finds that he is able to hear as well as to see the game characters for the first time, and that these characters are suddenly ‘life-sized, and ‘real’.
The room contains:
- numerous models of old computers
- what appears to be virtual reality equipment connected to the computers, which is kept behind a hessian screen – Chris’s Aunt May refers to this as the ‘time-travel section’
- a bulging bookcase holding books on time travel travel.
Amy has seen that the computer Chris is using is connected to some of the equipment behind the screen.
In addition to this, Chris’s aunt had said earlier, ‘Reg was always experimenting, trying to invent things, and he did talk sometimes about time travel’.
Other sensible conclusions regarding what has happened to Chris may be offered, but the book’s Prologue narrates a time at which `[h]e was inside a computer game that just seconds ago he had been controlling from a seat in front of a screen’. The book’s title also offers a decided hint. The most likely explanation of what has happened to Chris, therefore, should be recognised to be that he is now inside the game. How this has happened remains open to interpretation, but should connect the event to Chris’s uncle, his experiments and his inventions.

p.59: Why does Chris know about these tunnels? Explain how the structure of the story (and what we know as the reader) has led to this point.
We know from the beginning of the story that Chris had played some of the ‘Seven Missions’ game before, when he was eight. The following information is also built up slowly:
- When he was eight, Chris completed every mission up until, but not including, the seventh and last: passing the Mountain Beast (which challenge he has not yet encountered inside the game).
- With Amy in his aunt’s house, Chris completed the first four missions. During the fifth, he was taken inside the game.
Chris has quickly become aware that he must translate his gaming experience to the challenges now facing him (‘Chris’s mind raced as he reviewed the moves he had made when he played the computer game on-screen. What he did then he must do again now – for real’).

Chris tells Amy to trust his experience as far as it goes (‘Amy, please, just do what I say until we get a bit further on.’).

Chris remembers the route to the tunnels: (‘I think I remember that they were just around this corner’ ... as they rounded a corner [they] saw a cliff of almost white clay, rising several metres high and slanting to the west, just as Chris had remembered’).

He also remembers which two tunnels are safe, which allows him to find a silver sphere that creates fire, and which would turn them to stone.

Readers should be aware that Chris’ and Amy’s experience will replicate to some extent Chris’s previous experience of the game, and that this will allow Chris’s familiarity with it up to a point. It may also be noted, though, that:

- Chris does not remember every game perfectly; he has little memory of the missions that interested him less.
- He also finds the transfer of his skills difficult: ‘It was easy enough to escape a rain of arrows using a mouse and computer keys, but the whistle of real arrows cutting the air was terrifying.’
- Chris also had no awareness of the Underground Dragon or his trap, which were also in the tunnels, and has ‘no idea’ how to save someone if they’re turned to stone.

p.91: **If you were Chris, would you choose to leave the Little Princess, go back to the beginning of the game, or take the long way to the valley of the Mountain Beast? Explain your choice in detail.**

Since leaving the tunnels, Chris and Amy have entered the ‘Tower of Choice’, which gives them the chance to collect three useful items. In panic at having chosen so badly, Chris attempts to take a fourth. The three options in the question constitute a ‘Penalty Choice’.

The question asks for an opinion, so any detailed answer should be acceptable. Answers could consider the following.

- In support of leaving the Little Princess: At the thought of having to battle the Mountain Beast, Chris feels ‘flat out terrified’ and that ‘the problem seemed enormous and completely insoluble’. He is also concerned to take care of Amy.
- In support going back to the beginning of the game: Chris feels particularly pessimistic about the items he has chosen to assist his battle and may feel he could improve his game in this and other ways if he were to begin it again.
In support of taking the long way onwards: Chris has a sense of determination and adventure, wants to get the Princess to her kingdom and likes to solve computer games. (Naturally, this is the option the character actually picks.)

**The Spiral Chrysalis**

p.81: **If you could choose any place to go, in any year, where would you choose to go and why?**
This question is wholly subjective, so answers will be entirely up to individual children – but the reasons given for them should be well articulated.

p.133

**How would you feel if you were Carl now? Explain in detail, giving evidence of events from the text.**
Carl has foolishly caused himself to have been transported to a world of endless possibilities, which are accessed from a magical spiral staircase that emerges from a chrysalis. His twin sister Nareen and their friend Kelly (who ‘likes’ Carl and whom Carl ‘likes’ reciprocally) have also entered the staircase in order to try to free him. They have just a week to try to get home, or will remain there forever. In their attempts to escape, three enter improbable worlds through a seemingly endless series of doors. They are told that if they are able to enter a world they must have displaced a version of themselves to do so.
The following evidence of events is relevant:

- Carl is a joker and is resourceful, and he is concerned not to appear a fool in front of Nareen or, especially, Kelly – about both of whom he cares a lot. He is fanatical about motor racing.
- After first entering the staircase, Carl accidentally released three ghosts: apparently menacing and aggressive motorbikers, whose faces are covered by their helmets.
- The bikers reappeared, at a distance, to warn the three, without explanation, not to fly away from the infinite departure lounge in which they found themselves at the time.
- Carl encountered a banshee (a foreteller of death) washing the blood-stained leathers of the lead biker in a river.
- The banshee revealed that the lead biker was a girl, and that whatever would cause the bloodstains hadn’t yet happened.
- Nareen states that banshees usually only warn of the death of a family member.
- As they feel they may be approaching a way out, the three pass through a doorway that takes them to an indoor motorbike trials auditorium with a particularly difficult and dangerous course. Carl is required to compete by riding pillion.
• One biker has already fallen from the course – not onto ground, but through it, into an abyss.
• The biker with whom Carl is to ride (not the lead biker) removes her helmet to reveal herself to be identical to Kelly.
• At this point in the story, Carl and this biker have just begun the course and are about to encounter the ‘high jump’.

Given these events Carl’s feelings could be variously inferred, but answers should be well-reasoned.

**Jack No Name**

p.55: What do you think about Robert Fox, even though he has not yet appeared in the book? Explain your answer with reference to the text.

Jack No Name is a kitchen boy in Glastonbury monastery during the time of the crusades. He is a talented chef with a contemptuous master who takes credit for Jack’s skill. Jack is, furthermore, training himself to be a knight and has recently encountered a mysterious, wise old woman and her pretty, earnest granddaughter, Lara, whom he has sworn to assist and protect.

Answers to this question will be largely subjective, but the following is known about Robert Fox:

• He has menaced priests into accepting him as the new Bishop of Bath and Wells, after the old bishop’s sudden death and the disappearance of his will.
• Lara has told Jack that Fox is a witch-hunter and is searching out any woman that he thinks is a witch, a midwife or a healer.
• Lara states that Fox prevents messengers from leaving his cathedral.
• News of Fox’s appointment causes Abbot Cedric (the admirable head of Jack’s monastery) to ‘blanch’, then ‘transformed him from a sweet old man into a leader blazing with power’.
• His followers have attacked a village on Jack’s route to Wells ostensibly looking for witches, causing the villagers to turn on one another and drowning a young mother on Fox’s orders.

p.113: What message do you think Jack is trying to get across to the Abbot? Think about his recent observations about the clock.

Jack and Lara are trying to discover what really happened to Bishop Benedict (the recently deceased Bishop of Baths and Wells) and his will, suspecting that he had been poisoned rather than had contracted the plague.

© Pearson Education 2018
Jack, feeling he has made a discovery, sends a coded message to his abbot: that his ‘kitchen servant, Jack Blandiver, is very sorry for mooning around and must find the will to keep better time.’

Jack’s recent observations about the beautiful and elaborate clock in Wells cathedral are that:
- One of the moving figures in the clock’s mechanism is supposedly Jack Blandiver.
- The Clock measures time by both hours and the phases of the moon. Jack calls it ‘the moon clock’.
- On his first visit, the figures that perform actions as the clock strikes moved precisely and punctually.
- On his second, Jack notices a stiffness and delay in the movement. He feels the mechanism has recently been damaged.

The coded message Jack sends to the abbot should therefore, more or less thoroughly, be interpreted as intended to alert the abbot’s attention to the recent damage to the moon clock. Specifically, it emerges later in the text, Jack believes that the lost will of Bishop Benedictus is hidden there.

**Dogs of the Hinterland**

p.6: **Do you like the prologue? Does it make you want to read on? Refer to the text to explain your opinion.**

As this question asks for an opinion, any answer should be acceptable if it is well-reasoned.

The prologue introduces:
- The story’s genre (fantasy) and structure (quest).
- The story of a child prophesied to destroy a fortress and so abandoned in the desert until rescued by a ‘silver dog’.
- The existence of ‘silver dogs’, who have lived in the Hinterland far longer than humans and can communicate with humans.
- A notion of peril, fifteen years later, as an ‘unnatural force’ moves in the world, which even the silver dogs are ‘powerless’ to stop.

p.142: **How has the author built speed and tension into the story so far? Think about the structure of the story overall and find examples from the text to support your ideas.**

This is a broad question, and could be answered in a multitude of ways. All answers should, however, refer both to the story as a whole and to close textual examples.
The structure of *Dogs of the Hinterland* most clearly builds tension and anticipation through constant references to the past and the future in a manner more or less obscure to the reader, hinting at events that are only explained rather later in the narrative. It also regularly presents alternate possibilities and points of view in tension with one another, which each seem as persuasive as those that turn out to be central to the plot. These temporal and subjective variations in the plot begin to come together towards its end, so the stories progress faster and appear to pick up pace. The book’s plot so far is as follows.

- After the Prologue (see above), we meet Vancy, a tomboy fond of horses, on the night of her coming-of-age party, and her friends Kerei and ‘Squirt’.
- The three discuss a time when the two boys believe they ‘rescued’ Vancy, at a time when she denies needing rescuing. This back story is revealed in stages; we learn that Vancy had left her adopted parents and their home settlement of Bassorah to try to find her ‘real’ parents. She has discovered what had ‘become of’ her mother, and found her uncle.
- Meanwhile, soldiers arrive in Bassorah as emissaries from Herit, an obviously powerful man. He demands the return of his ‘blood daughter’, now revealed to be Vancy. It is then revealed that Herit has waged war and sabotage on Bassorah for years, trying to lay hands on its water supply and fertile lands.
- Bassorah chooses to protect Vancy, making war with Herit inevitable.
- The story of Vancy’s arrival at Bassorah is then discussed, revealing that she was brought by a silver dog and left to be adopted without Herit’s knowledge.
- Vancy decides to leave Bassorah and return to Herit.
- During her journey across the Hinterland with her uncle (who is returning to his village), Vancy recalls her first attempt to destroy Herit’s fortress, using an avalanche. She is tempted to go on to her uncle’s village, but continues to the fortress.
- Vancy receives a cool welcome from her affectionless father. The reader must be prompted to wonder why Vancy has been forced to return to Herit, if not for affection’s sake.
- Meanwhile, Kerei eventually convinces Squirt that they ought to go after Vancy. The boys set out into the Hinterland on a ‘borrowed’ horse. They lose control of the horse, which gallops faster and faster, out of their control (this could be seen as a metaphor for the story).
- The story now flicks, chapter by chapter, between the two perspectives: Vancy’s and that of Kerei and Squirt.
- Even as Vancy is shown around the fortress, she plots her eventual escape. Herit questions her about Bassorah. She meets an old woman who was once a maid to her mother.
• The boys visit the silver dogs, and learn that someone had been stealing skulls from their graveyard. They discover that the skulls allow the holder (Herit) to control the dogs’ ghosts.
• Vancy’s uncle, Kerei and Squirt all have a vision of a ghost-dog army attacking Bassorah; Vancy dreams of a giant, headless dog.
• As the boys learn more of the dogs’ graveyard, Vancy witnesses Herit using the skulls to control his phantom army.
• The boys arrive at the fortress to rescue Vancy, prevent her being stabbed, and the three sprint to a horse to warn Bassorah of Herit’s plan.

Any textual examples that illustrate similar tensions of time and perception (for example, hinting narration such as ‘He hadn’t yet noticed the other pack propped next to his against the wall’ and ‘Although later she would struggle to remember exactly what he had said’) would constitute a very good answer.

**Island Bound**

p.7: **Would you like to move to a different country for two years?**
Hannah and her family are in Bermuda, looking for a house in which to live for two years away from home in Canada. Hannah has mixed feelings about the move.

Answers will be based solely on the children’s own opinions, but should be backed up with clear reasons for their choice.

Answers selecting ‘Yes’ could argue, for example:

• I’d like to live in a warmer / cooler climate,
• I’d be able to make new friends,
• I could see new places and learn new customs,
• I’m bored with life at home,
• I enjoy going on adventures.

Answers selecting ‘No’ could argue, for example:

• I’d miss all my friends,
• I don’t like adventures or travelling to new places,
• I’d be homesick,
• I don’t like eating different food,
• I don’t want to live in a warmer / cooler climate.
p.107: **Why do you think Belterre does not want to go to the beach?**

Belterre, a native of Bermuda and a friend of Hannah’s family, never visits the beach with Hannah’s family. When asked why, she says that the beach is ‘too hot and windy’ for her. When Hannah argues against this, she becomes silent and suddenly becomes ‘very busy wiping down the benchtop’ although it’s already clean. Earlier, Belterre reacted in the following ways when the beach is mentioned:

- ‘Belterre was frowning, the way she always did whenever anyone mentioned a trip to the beach.’
- ‘“Just stay out of the water,” snapped Belterre, glancing away when everyone turned to look at her. “It’s mighty cold this time of year. I’m sure I don’t have to remind you. Not good for swimming at all.”’
- ‘Then her face grew suddenly solemn. “And promise you’ll stay out of the water.”’

Belterre has also spoken feelingly but mysteriously of an old woman called Martha Cox, and her ‘tragic life’, but refuses to go into details. Hannah has discovered that Martha’s two sons drowned in the sea. Therefore children could (accurately) infer that Belterre was involved when Martha’s sons drowned.

**Into the Hinterland**

p.8: **Which do you think is the most important reason for having a prologue?**

The options given are ‘Creates interest in the story’, ‘Sets the scene’ and ‘Introduces the characters’.

This story is a prequel to *Dogs of the Hinterland*. The prologue describes a nameless man abandoning a baby on a rock in a wasteland, and then a silvery dog approaching the child and slipping a small stone into its mouth.

Any answer should be acceptable if justified, although in *this* prologue no characters are introduced in any detail, and description of the setting is minimal.

p.85: **Did you expect Vancy to react like this? Why, or why not?**

Vancy had run away into the Hinterland that surrounds her home settlement of Bassorah, to find her ‘real’ parents, when she was captured by emissaries from the fortress of a tyrant called Herit. Not knowing of her capture, Vancy’s neighbours Kerei and ‘Squirt’ have run away to find her. When they finally manage to break into Vancy’s cell, she demands ‘What took you so long?’ As they try to free her, she thinks them ‘incompetent’ and thinks, of Kerei, ‘She could see right into his weaselly boy’s heart, and she didn’t like what she saw there.’
The question invites children’s own opinions, but these should be backed up with evidence from the text.
So far in the story we have learned the following about Vancy.

- She was not born in her home settlement of Bassorah, and felt very much like an outsider.
- She was envious of her contemporary Kerei’s coming-of age party, denies that Kerei is her friend and teases him.
- Kerei wonders if Vancy is ‘one of the enemy’ from Herit’s fortress in the Hinterland.
- Vancy is good with the ponies that serve as transport and power in her community, and Kerei refers to her as ‘fearless’ and ‘one really tough girl’. He knows that she acts practically and calmly in emergencies.
- Vancy survived well in the Hinterland, not minding sleeping rough and prepared to use her knife to defend herself. However, she realised she had no plan and wondered even before her capture whether her expedition was a mistake.
- In captivity, Vancy has proved herself to be observant and resourceful, using a pocketknife she had hidden from the guards to begin to unscrew a part of her cage.
- Kerei knows that if he rescues Vancy, ‘she’ll never live it down.’
- However, when she meets Herit, she feels ‘as small and helpless as a child’. She tries to hide this, ‘trying to sound braver than she felt’.
- Herit calls her ‘quite a little firebrand’.
- Herit reveals that a prophecy was made about Vancy when she was a baby, foretelling that she would destroy his fortress, and that he’d left her in the desert to die – he promises to do the same to her again at dawn.

Answers selecting ‘Yes’ could therefore argue that Vancy is clearly fiercely independent and not completely keen on Kerei.
Answers selecting ‘No’ could argue, however, that Vancy knows she is in real trouble and could have been grateful for the boys’ assistance.
p.128: **Who do you think Tem is?**
The options given are ‘Vancy’s father’, ‘Vancy’s brother’, ‘Vancy’s uncle’ and ‘Vancy’s grandfather’.
Having escaped from Herit’s fortress, Vancy, Kerei and Squirt have been led by a silver dog to meet a strange man in the Hinterland. He introduces himself as Tem.
Answers should take the following information into account.
- The man thought he recognised Vancy, staring at her ‘as if he had seen a ghost’ and asking ‘Dell? ... Is that really you?’.
- Vancy also feels he looks familiar, and ‘a strange feeling raced through her. “Father?” she asked.’
- The silver dog tries to communicate something to Vancy ‘and it wasn’t anything to do with her parents.’
- ‘“My sister,” said the man, “was called Dell, and she looked exactly like you.” He looked at his hands, work-worn and dirty. “That’s why, when I saw you...” He trailed off.’
Based mainly on this last point, children may be able to conclude (correctly) that Tem is Vancy’s uncle.

**Run**

p.101: **Do you think Jacob should try to learn about a job he isn’t interested in?**
The story is set in small-town Australia, in 1911. Jacob’s mother, Alice, has married Victoria’s father, Ed Cooper, after the deaths of their former spouses. Mr Cooper runs a hardware store, and expects Jacob to help out with a view to taking over (half of) the business when he is older. Jacob, however, is more interested in taking care of horses and becoming a farmer, like his birth father, than in running the shop.
Answers will be based on children’s own opinions, but must be backed up with evidence from the text.
Answers selecting ‘No’ could argue, for example:
- Jacob is not very good at helping in the shop because he doesn’t enjoy it, so the business might suffer.
- He is still young and could still follow his dreams to become a farmer.
- Any time he spends in the shop could therefore be used training to be a farmer.
Answers selecting ‘Yes’ could argue, for example:
- He should work for his stepfather to make things easier for the family.
- It is a safe and certain future for him, whereas his mother believes ‘there’s no future in farmin’.’
- If he works hard at it, he would get better and could enjoy it more.
p.132: **What do you think Mr Cooper is thinking about? What kind of answers might he be looking for?**

Answers will be children’s own inferences, but should consider the following aspects of the plot so far.

- Victoria and her young sister Elizabeth have contracted ‘infantile paralysis’ (polio), which has killed Elizabeth.
- Since the death, Victoria’s father has been avoiding her.
- However, Jacob has been learning how to read to her using *The Wizard of Oz* and his mother, Alice, has been nursing her, although forbidden to do so by the doctor or Victoria’s father, using traditional herbal remedies and massage.
- Victoria’s father has recently discovered the deceit. He was furious until he realised that the treatment had worked, and that he’d been neglecting his family.
- At this moment, he is sitting at the table, not reading the newspaper in front of him and glancing at the parlour door.
  - The parlour is the place where Victoria has been sleeping, Victoria’s mother’s piano used to be, and where they put her coffin before her funeral, as well as where they put Elizabeth’s coffin before hers.
  - Jacob has just come in and declared he can’t and won’t work at the hardware store any more.
  - Therefore, Jacob’s decision comes just when Mr Cooper has been forced to realise he was wrong not to trust his wife, and wrong to shut out his daughter, and when his perspective will be broadest.

*The Sign of a Warrior*

p.79: **Would you like to be Ash at this point in the story?**

Ash’s father is a feature-writer, and has been asked to write a story from Africa. Ash has convinced his father to take him along. At this point in the story, Ash and his dad have arrived at the Maasai village where they will spend a month. Ash has so far seen only small children, huts, dust, cows and goats in the village, and he will certainly have no TV, computers or bathroom facilities.

Answers will be based on the children’s own opinions but need to be backed up.

Answers selecting ‘Yes’ could argue, for example:

- I would enjoy meeting new people.
- I would enjoy learning new customs.
- It is only for a month.
- It is better than being at school and doing homework.
- It is a fun adventure.
Answers selecting ‘No’ could argue, for example:
- I would miss home.
- I would miss my friends.
- I would miss my education.
- I would miss my TV / computer / bathroom.
- I am shy and would find it hard to make friends.
- I would not want to live in a dusty hut.

p.137: **Why do you think it is important to the Maasai to think about the group?**

While walking near the village, Ash and his new friend Ranan see a recent lion paw print, and Ash is irritated that Ranan seems to value the wellbeing of his tribe over their own safety as individuals.

Answers should show an understanding of the following:
- The Maasai have a much-respected reputation as warriors, and so must protect their village from danger.
- There are serious dangers involved in the tribal way of life, e.g. lions, venomous spiders etc., and the Maasai need to look out for one another.
- The villagers all care for one another as an extended family.
- They achieve more working as a team, and very little as individuals. They must, for example, build their houses and hunt for food themselves, rather than being able simply to but these things.